The Salah of a Believer in the Quran and Sunnah

Shaykh Abu Yusuf Riyadh ul Haq
The Salah of a Believer
In the Quran & Sunnah
By
Abu Yusuf Riyadh ul Haq
Contents

Foreword .......................................................... 5
Introduction ...................................................... 7

Part One  A Brief Description of salah .................. 15

Part Two  The method of salah in detail ................. 23

Part Three  Miscellaneous Issues of salah ............. 75
  Chapter 1  Ahadeeth of the general description of salah. ......................... 77
  Chapter 2  The distance of the feet in salah ............. 81
  Chapter 3  The position of the hands in Salah ............ 83
    Ahadeeth on placing the hands below the navel .......... 83
    The view of the four schools of fiqh ..................... 87
    Ahadeeth of placing hands upon the chest ............... 89
  Chapter 4  The recitation of Surah al Fatihah .......... 99
    General recitation ........................................ 100
    Recitation of Surah al Fatihah and more ................. 100
    Recitation behind the Imam whilst he is also reading out aloud .................. 101
    Reciting behind an Imam in silent salah ................. 103
  Chapter 5  Ameen .............................................. 105
    Ahadeeth of saying Ameen silently ..................... 105
    Ahadeeth of raising the voice with Ameen .............. 112
  Chapter 6  Raising the hands .............................. 119
    Ahadeeth of not raising the hands except in the beginning ................. 119
    Answers to the ahadeeth of raising the hands .......... 129
    Ahadeeth on raising the hands when falling down for sujud .......... 131
    Ahadeeth on raising the hands between the two sajdahs .......... 133
    Ahadeeth on raising the hands at the beginning of every rak'ah ......... 135
Ahadeeth on raising the hands after standing up from two rak'at ........................................ 137
Ahadeeth on raising the hands with every takbeer in salah .................................................. 138
Chapter 7 Not fastening the hands after ruk'at ................................................................. 145
Chapter 8 Placing the knees before the hands in sujud ..................................................... 147
Answers to the ahadeeth of placing the hands before the knees ........................................ 151
Chapter 9 To stand up straight after sujud and not to sit ...................................................... 157
Answers to the ahadeeth of sitting after the second sajdah ................................................ 161
Chapter 10 Clenching one's fists in salah ............................................................ 165
Chapter 11 Tashahhud .......................................................... 167
Chapter 12 The movement of the finger in tashahhud .......................................................... 173
The verdicts of the madhhab ............................................................ 178
The raising of the finger ............................................................ 181
Chapter 13 Difference in salah between men and women .................................................. 185
Verdicts and practice of the Sahabah & ........................................................................... 189
Verdicts of the Tabi'un and other ulama ........................................................ .................. 190
List of differences between the prayer of a man and a woman ........................................ 193
Biographies .................................................................. 195
Glossary ..................................................................... 205
Bibliography .................................................................. 211
Reference Notes ............................................................ 219

Foreword

By Shaikh ul Hadeeth Hadhrat Moulana Yusuf sahib

All praise be to Allah, and may prayers and salutations descend upon His Messenger.

Dear and respected Maulana Riyadh ul Haq (May Allah protect him) has fulfilled one of the greatest needs of our time by compiling this work, ‘The Salah of a Believer in the Quran and Sunnah’.

For a long time now many schemes and plots have been devised in numerous ways to distance our youth from Islam. When these conspiring elements realise that, despite all the means adopted, their schemes have failed to weaken the religious beliefs of these youngsters, and when they also observe that these young Muslims remain punctual in offering their prayers as well as fulfilling the other principal duties of Islam, they then try to instil in the minds of the young that their own lifelong salah and that of their ancestors for centuries has always remained incorrect.

This book serves as a remedy for such doubts created by the enemies of Islam, primarily because it mentions the correct method of performing salah in accordance to the Sunnah. Thereafter, if there is a need for evidence to support the claim of this authentic manner of salah, that is also catered for convincingly. As for those who

1 Hadhrat Moulana Yusuf sahib is one of the foremost disciples and khalifah of the late Shaikh ul Hadeeth Hadhrat Moulana Muhammad Zakariyya raha rashidulahi alaik. He is the founder and patron of numerous religious establishments throughout the world including Darul Uloom al Arabiyah al Islamiyah, Holcombe, Bury, UK, where at present he is also the senior teacher of hadeeth. His students, who number many, are spread across the globe occupied in the service of deen in varying capacities. I am also honoured to have been tutored by him. May Allah reward him, lengthen his shadow over us and enable us to benefit from his company. Ameen – Author.
constantly encounter individuals who engage in creating fitnah amongst the Muslims, the final section of the book contains conclusive answers to silence such people.

I have great hope that, just as Allah the Most High has graced Moulana Riyadh ul Haq’s speeches, lectures and recordings with acceptance, insha Allah his writings will also be honoured with similar recognition and approval. “And this is not at all difficult for Allah.”

May Allah the Almighty shower prayers and blessings upon the best of his creation, our master and leader Muhammad, and upon all his family and companions.

(Hadhrat Moulana) Yusuf (sahib), Darul Uloom, Holcombe, Bury.

Introduction

All praise be to Allah, the Lord of the worlds, and may salutations, prayer, peace and blessings descend upon His beloved, the best of creation, Prophet Muhammad.

A Muslim is duty bound to obey Allah and his Messenger ﷺ in all matters of life, ranging from personal purity and prayer to the political and economic affairs of the state. The laws of Islam regulate his worship, character, dealings, individual and social behaviour, and his speech and deeds, in both private and in public.

To be informed of his obligations, and to make himself aware of Islam’s commandments a believer must turn to both the Quran and the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ. For the purposes of his understanding both sources are interdependent and indispensable. The Quran is the word of Allah, and the Messenger’s Sunnah ﷺ serves as its exposition and practical application. The origins of both lie in revelation and, although one is ascribed to Allah and the other to the Prophet ﷺ, both stem from the same divine source. Allah says of his Messenger ﷺ, ‘Nor does he speak of (his own) desire. It is nothing but a revelation that is revealed.’

Even with the Quran being present, a person’s faith and his understanding of it will both remain incomplete without recourse to the Sunnah. The Prophet ﷺ was the perfect embodiment of the Quran’s teachings, and his example was the supreme standard set by Allah for all to follow. To obey his Lord and please Him, it is

---

2 Ibrahim 14:20

imperative that the believer adopts the way of the Prophet ﷺ and abides by it. Allah Says, ‘Whoever obeys the Messenger, he has indeed obeyed Allah.’

The Sahabah ﷺ who were chosen by Allah to be his Prophet’s companions best understood this obligation and fulfilled it to the utmost. In their zeal to follow the prophetic example, they closely observed and emulated even the minutest details of his actions and behaviour. They beheld his manner of ablution and washed accordingly. His instructions were ‘Pray as you have seen me praying’, and so they stood by close in the congregational salah and strove to catch every detail of his posture, movements and recitation, and then moulded their prayer to his. The same procedure was devotedly followed with the Prophet’s ﷺ fast and supererogatory prayers, personal habits, inclinations, likes and dislikes. Each companion based what he could of his actions on what he had seen or heard directly from the Prophet ﷺ. The rest he would learn from his fellow companions who had seen or received the teachings at first hand.

After the Prophet ﷺ left this world, many of his companions emigrated from Madinah either by conscription in military expeditions or by simply taking up residence in other cities. Privileged with the legacy of the Prophet’s ﷺ auspicious company and tutoring, and held in love and reverence by the inhabitants of these cities, they quickly became religious authorities tasked with the responsibilities of instruction, guidance, and consultation. They discharged their duty to the best of their ability, imparting the knowledge they had acquired and faithfully conveying the treasure of prophethood to their pupils amongst the Tabi’un, who in turn passed it on to their disciples amongst the Tabi’ Tabieen. It was these very teachings that were collected by scholars such as Imam Abu Hanifah and the other jugaha and developed into a vast and complex yet coherent system of fiqh governing every aspect of Muslim life. It was founded, not on the detached opinions of a few individuals as some continue to allege, but on the teachings and practices of the Sahabah ﷺ taken ultimately from the Prophet ﷺ himself.

These schools of fiqh, which were further developed, refined and consolidated by the learned followers of the Imams and adopted and endorsed by virtually all the Muslims throughout the centuries, have survived till this day and are still adhered to by the clear majority of the ummah. Sadly, of late, they have come under attack from some who purport to follow the Quran & Sunnah directly, and who callously dismiss the madhahib as being the ‘opinions of a few individuals’ and denounce their adoption as ‘blind following’. This emerging trend amongst the Muslims of inviting all and sundry to abandon the madhahib and take direct recourse to the original sources of the Shariah is but a simplistic slogan, which in one call endeavours to dispose entirely of a complex system of fiqh that has endured the trials of time, and that has been so carefully cultivated by a brilliant Islamic scholarship over many centuries. Claims by such individuals of today of being able to draw inspiration directly from the Quran and Sunnah and of extracting guidelines and rules without the academic mediation of learned authorities are superficial, and wholly without foundation or substance.

One of the most conspicuous implementations of this fiqh in the daily life of a Muslim is the manner of performing salah. It is the first and greatest obligation of Islam after faith, and a visible act of worship that is repeated a number of times daily, in congregation. It exemplifies the application of fiqh, and in its few and short movements epitomises the refined and consolidated learning and practice of centuries. This ideological struggle between the vast majority who adhere to the madhahib of fiqh and the dissenting minority who seek to discard them is no more apparent than in salah.

It has always been the view and practice of a great portion of the Muslim ummah to perform their salah according to the Hanafi fiqh. This practice originates not from any wish to follow the opinions of individuals, but from an earnest and honest desire to fulfil the

\[\text{al Nisa 4:80.} \]

\[\text{Bukhari 605.} \]
Prophet's command 'Pray as you have seen me praying.' It stems from the belief that this is the prayer of the Prophet himself, as observed, preserved and conveyed by a great number of Sahabah and collected and adopted by the Tabi'in and Tab'i Tabieen including Imam Abu Hanifah and his fellow ulama.

Under the pretext of a simplistic return to the Quran and Sunnah and as part of the wider censure of fiqh discussed earlier, this method of salah has also been subjected to a sustained and concerted attack of unscholarly criticism and denunciation, and at times even ridicule and scorn. This has created great confusion and has thrown many people into an undeserved state of guilt leading them to think that their method of salah has no basis in the Shariah, and that their daily prayers are nothing but a series of motions that contradict the Sunnah of the Prophet.

This book describes the procedure of salah from the beginning to the end according to the fiqh of Imam Abu Hanifah, his mujahid companions and their countless followers. Rather than simply list the juristic pronouncements of the Imams, it details every movement and posture of salah and substantiates them from the ahadeeth of the Prophet, the narrations of the Sahabah and Tabi'un and, where relevant, from the verses of the Quran. It thus demonstrates that the method of salah in the Hanafi fiqh is not only in total agreement with the Quran and Sunnah but is, in fact, derived exclusively from them as understood, practised and taught by the Sahabah and the learned Muslims of the early generations.

The book is divided into three parts. Part One contains a very brief and simple description of salah from the beginning to the end. In this section no evidences are mentioned nor any discussion entered into regarding any aspect of salah.

The second part of the book serves as a commentary to Part One. Here, each sentence from the first part has been repeated as a heading together with supporting verses of the Quran (if applicable), ahadeeth of the Prophet and verdicts and practice of the Sahabah, and Tabi'un. Some of the names of the Sahabah, Tabi'un, Tab'i Tabieen, and the mujahid Imams of fiqh who were known to have adopted the same view and practice have also been listed. In this section only supporting narrations are mentioned. The opposing arguments of those who hold an alternative view on the method of performing any particular action of salah are not discussed.

Part Three consists of a number of chapters, each of which examines a particular issue of salah in detail that has been made a point of controversy by certain people. The evidences of the Hanafi fiqh in each of these questions have been listed together with a detailed analysis of the opposing arguments. An attempt has also been made to reconcile apparently contradictory ahadeeth on the same subject by way of giving them a suitable explanation in a different context or incorporating them into the meaning of other ahadeeth.

The book also contains a section on biographies that provides some brief details about the lives and works of many of the scholars whose verdicts have been quoted, especially in relation to the referencing and classification of hadeeth. There is also a glossary at the end that explains the technical terms used in the book.

I have made every attempt to fully exploit the resources available to me and thus collect as many ahadeeth from as many different sources as possible on the various topics of salah discussed, in particular those that have been made controversial. Rather than rely on the attribution of ahadeeth by other authors, I have personally referred to the original collections to ensure both the correct referencing of the ahadeeth and their suitability to be used in any particular context. This has been done with virtually every reference of hadeeth in the book. In the few exceptional cases where this has not been possible I have mentioned the names of the authors whose ascription I have depended on.
It should also be noted that whenever a hadeth has been quoted from more than one source, as is most often the case, the names of the transmitting authors have been placed in order of seniority according to their dates of death. For example one footnote reference reads: ‘Abdul Razzaq 2539, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2378, Ahmad 1009, Ibn Majah 275, Abu Dawood 61 & 618, and Tirmidhi 3.’ These are the names of the authors with the reference number of the same hadeth in their individual collections. They have been listed in order of seniority as their respective dates of death are: Abdul Razzaq (d. 211 AH), Ibn Abi Shaibah (d. 235 AH), Ahmad (d. 241 AH), Ibn Majah (d. 273 AH), Abu Dawood (d. 275 AH), and Tirmidhi (d. 279 AH). This has been done throughout the book.

Mostly for the sake of brevity, as in the example given above, only the names of the authors of hadeth are mentioned without the complete details of their works. There is a reference note at the end of the book, which lists the respective works of these authors that are being referred to in such cases. It should also be remembered that the references given are from the original Arabic works, whose details such as edition numbers and dates of publication are given in the bibliography at the end of the book.

Despite these undertakings, I make no claims about this work and confess that it is far from complete and can be improved upon greatly. It is a small and humble effort on my part, and like any human endeavour it will not be void of shortcomings and flaws. If what I have written is correct then it is from Allah and to Him belongs all praise, and if it is incorrect then it is from myself and Shaitan, and Allah and his Prophet ﷺ are innocent of it.

I pray and hope that this work will furnish readers with a better understanding of the method of salah according to the Hanafi fiqh, and enable them to appreciate that Muslims who offer their prayers in this manner have an equal if not greater entitlement than others to the claim of following the Quran and Sunnah and of performing their salah in conformity with that of the noble Prophet ﷺ.
Part One

A Brief Description of salah
When you wish to begin your prayer, you should make the intention and raise your hands until they are level with the lobe of your ears. The palms should be facing towards the *qiblah* and the fingers should be slightly spread out in a natural manner: not too closed, not too open. Your gaze should not wander in any direction but should be focused in front of you on your place of prayer. You should then say the consecrating *takbeer* (*takbeerat al tahreemah*), which is

\[
\text{الله أكَبر} \\
\text{(Allahu Akbar)} \\
\text{Allah is the Greatest}
\]

and placing your right palm over the back of your left hand, wrist and lower arm you should position both hands below the navel.

Then quietly read *thana*,

\[
\text{سُبْحَانَ الَّهِ وَبِحَمْدِهِ وَاَلْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْقَهَرُ} \\
\text{(Subhanallahumma wa bihamdika wa tabarakasmuka} \\
\text{wa ta’ala jadduka wa la ilaha ghairuk)}
\]

You are Glorified oh Allah and praised. Blessed is your Name and Elevated is your Majesty. There is no God besides you.

Followed by *ta’awwudh*,

\[
\text{أَعُوذُ بِاللهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجُمِ} \\
\text{(Aoudhu billahi minashaitanir rajeem)}
\]

I seek refuge with Allah from Shaitan the accursed
basmalah,

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ
(Bismillahir Rahmanir Raheem)
I begin with the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

and then a recitation of Surah al-Fatiha (the opening chapter of the Quran).

On completing Surah al-Fatiha you should say Ameen silently, regardless of whether you are alone or praying behind the Imam. Then repeat the basmalah and recite any other surah, or at least one long verse or three small verses from any part of the Quran. If you are praying in a congregation then you should not read anything behind the Imam especially whilst he is audibly reciting the Quran.

When this recitation is finished, repeat the takbeer and, without raising your hands bow down into ruk'u grasping your knees with the fingers outspread, and keeping the back straight; not arching it, neither raising the head nor lowering it. Ensure that your arms are also kept free of the body. Say the tasbeeh

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّي الْعَظِيمِ
(Subhana Rabbiyal Adheem)
Glorified is my Lord, the Most Great

for a minimum of three times and then rise again to the standing position (qiyam) saying,

سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ لِمَنْ خَمِدَهُ
(Sami Allahu li man hamidah)
Allah hears the one who praises him.

You should stand erect and say

اللَّهُمَّ رَبِّي وَلَكَ الحَمَدَ
(Allahumma Rabbana wa lakal Hamd)
Oh Allah, Our Lord! You are Praised.

Members of the congregation should only say ‘Allahumma Rabbana…’ and not ‘Sami Allah…’.

Whilst standing in this position do not fasten your hands but leave them at your sides. Then, repeating the takbeer and without raising your hands begin the prostration. Allow your knees to first touch the ground followed by the hands, nose and finally the forehead which should be positioned between the two palms laid flat on the ground towards the qiblah.

Do not rest your forearms on the ground but keep them raised and away from the body. Also ensure that your thighs are not pressed against your abdomen, and that your toes are facing qiblah. Say the tasbeeh

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّي الْعَظِيمِ
(Subhana Rabbiyal A'ala)
Glorified is my Lord, the Most High

for a minimum of three times, and then pronouncing the takbeer raise your head and sit upright, without sitting on the balls of your feet and without leaning to any one side.

You should sit with both your legs tucked beneath you, the left foot spread out with the toes in the direction of the right foot which itself should be upright with the toes facing the qiblah. Both hands should be rested upon the thighs with the fingers facing the qiblah. This sitting posture is to be adopted throughout the salah. There is no difference in the manner of sitting for the second and last rak'ah or for the sitting between the two prostrations.
Then repeating the takbeer, fall into the second prostration, and after having recited the tasbeeh as in the first prostration, say the takbeer again and return to the standing position. Whilst standing up, ensure that you first lift your forehead and nose, followed by your hands and finally your knees. Do not support yourself on your hands and do not adopt a sitting posture in between.

With this you will have completed your first rak'ah. All the remaining rak'aat of salah are to be performed in a similar manner, with the same recitations, movements and postures. However, in the remaining rak'aat you should not recite thana, and ta'awwudh, nor should you raise your hands with any takbeer as you did in the beginning of the salah.

You should, however, recite basmalah before Surah al Fatiha at the beginning of each rak'ah. When you have completed your second prostration of the second rak'ah, do not stand up but adopt the sitting posture as before and recite the tashahhud:

الحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي خَلَقَنَا مِن شَرِّ الظُّلُمَاتِ وَلَن نَّفَسِّرَنَّكَ إِلَّا بِالْحَقِّ الْبَيِّنَى
وَرَحْمَةَ اللَّهِ وَبِرَآيَاتِ اللَّهِ السَّلَامُ عَلَيْنَا وَعَلَى عِيَادَتِ اللَّهِ الصَّالِحِينَ
أَشْهَدُ أَنَّ لَنَّا إِلَى اللَّهِ وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا نَّبِيًّا وَرَسُولُهُ

(At-taiyyatu littahi wassalwaatu wat-tayyibatu was-salamu alyaika ayyuhan nabiyyu wa rahmatullahi wa barakaatu. Assalamu alaika wa ala ibadillahis saliheen. Ash-hadu anla ilaha illalahu wa ash-hadu anna Muhammadan abduhu wa rasoolu.)

All honoured greetings, good deeds and good words are due to Allah. Peace, Allah’s mercy and His blessings be on you oh Prophet. Peace be on us and on the pious servants of Allah. I bear witness that there is no God except Allah and I bear witness that Muhammad is His servant and Messenger.

When you reach the words ‘La ilaha’ (there is no God), raise your index finger and tuck the middle, third and last finger into the palm, with the thumb and middle finger touching and forming a circle.

The index finger should only be raised once during the tashahhud at the time mentioned above. It should not be raised at any other point nor should it be constantly moved.

If this is a three or four rak'ah prayer, then you should recite no more than the above tashahhud and stand up for the third rak'ah.

Again, whilst rising you should not support yourself on your hands but stand up directly. In each of the final two rak'aat of a fardh salah, you should only recite basmalah and then Surah al Fatiha.

After completing the second prostration of the final rak'ah you should again adopt the sitting posture and recite the tashahhud as before, followed by prayer and salutations upon the Prophet ﷺ as follows.

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آل مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا صَلَّيْتُ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمٍ وَعَلَى آل إِبْرَاهِيمٍ إِلَّا خَمْسَة مَرَاتٍ مَعَهُ وَعَلَى آل مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا بَارَكْتُ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمٍ وَعَلَى آل إِبْرَاهِيمٍ إِلَّا خَمْسَة مَرَاتٍ

(Allahumma salli ala Muhammadin(w) wa ala aali Muhammadin kama sallalatu ala Ibrahimina wa ala aali Ibrahimina innaka hammeedun(m) majeed. Allahumma baarik ala Muhammadin(w)
wa ala aali Muhammadin kama baarakta ala Ibrahima wa aali Ibrahima innaka hameedun majeed.

Oh Allah! Send prayers on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad just as you sent prayers on Ibrahim and the family of Ibrahim. Indeed you are full of praise and majesty. Oh Allah! Send blessings on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad just as you sent blessings on Ibrahim and on the family of Ibrahim. Indeed you are full of praise and majesty.

You should then recite one or more prayers ensuring that they are known authentic prayers from the Quran and hadith.

After completing your prayers you should say

السّلَّامُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَتُ اللَّهِ

(Assalamu alaikum wa rahmatullah)

Peace be on you and the mercy of Allah

once whilst turning your head to the right and then a second time whilst turning your head to the left. These final words end your salah.
When you wish to begin your prayer, you should make the intention.

Sayyiduna Umar ﷺ narrates, ‘Actions are based on intention. For each man will be the reward of what he has intended. So he who has migrated to Allah and his Prophet ﷺ, his will be a migration to Allah and his Prophet ﷺ. As for he who has migrated to a worldly gain which he hopes to acquire, or a woman whom he wishes to marry, then his will be a migration to whatever he has intended.’

Note that when praying in congregation it is necessary to make the intention of following the Imam also. It is reported from Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ as part of a longer hadeeth that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘The Imam has been appointed so that he may be followed. Therefore, do not differ from him.’

Sayyiduna Jabir bin Abdullah ﷺ narrates that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘The Imam is responsible, therefore whatever he does, you do.’

Both of the above narrations show the position and leadership of the Imam in salah, and signify that it is not acceptable for one to join a congregation without the intention of following the Imam and making him responsible. The following narration makes this clear:

Ibrahim al Nakha'i10 said, ‘If you join in a congregation and do not make the intention of their salah then yours will be invalid. And if the Imam makes the intention for a salah and those behind him make an intention for another salah, his salah will be valid but not theirs.’

---

7 Bukhari 1 and Muslim 1907.
8 Bukhari 689 and Muslim 411.
9 Tabarani in al M’si'um al Awasat as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2066. Also reported by Daruqtuni 1214. Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani has declared it hasan 2175. For details of the lives, learning and works of both Hafidh Haithami and Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani see the biographies section at the end of the book.
10 For details of his life and learning see the biographies section at the end of the book.
11 Imam Muhammad in Kitab al Aathaar 153.
The intention should preferably be made in one's heart and not verbally. It is sufficient to have a definite knowledge in the mind about the salah and the manner in which it is being performed. However, some scholars have made concessions for those who are unable to focus themselves or who regularly experience doubt unless they pronounce the intention.

*And raise your hands until they are level with the lobe of your ears.*

Sayyiduna Anas ﯽ says, 'I saw the Prophet ﯽ say the takbeer and place his thumbs close to his ears. He bowed down into ruk'u until each of his joints became motionless, and then descended (into sujud) with the takbeer. His knees went before his hands.'

In another narration Sayyiduna Anas ﯽ reports, 'When the Prophet ﯽ would say the takbeer he would raise his hands until he brought them in line with his ears and then say *Subhanak Allahumma...*'

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﯽ says, 'I saw the Prophet ﯽ raise his hands until his earlobes in salah.'

---

12 This is for men. Women should raise their hands to their shoulders or close to their bosoms. See Chapter 13 in Part Three for more details.
13 Hakim 822 and Baihaqi 2632. Hakim classified it *saheeh* and Dhadabi agreed with him. Hafidh Ibn al Humam quotes Ibn al Jawzi in *Fath al Qadeer* 1/287 as saying that all of its narrators are authentic. For details of Hafidh Ibn al Humam's life, learning and works see the biographies section at the end of the book.
14 Abu Ya'la 3735, Tabarani in *al M'ujam al Awsat* as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/107. Hafidh Haithami adds that its narrators are authentic. Also reported by Daruquni 1135. Ibn Qudamah says in *al Mughni* 2/27 that its narrators are all authentic.
15 Imam Abu Hanifah as quoted in *Jan'i al Masaneed* 1/112. Also reported by Ibn Abi Shaibah 2410, Ahmad 18370, Abu Dawood 737, Nasai in his *al Majmaa* 882 and his *al Sunan al Kubra* 956, Ibn al Jarood in *al Muntaqa* 202, Ibn Khuzaimah 480, Tahawi 1/196 and Tabarani in *al M'ujam al Kabeer* 22/32 no 72. Imam Nasai says in his *al Sunan al Kubra* 956, 'Although Abdul Jabbar did not hear *ahadeeth* directly from his father the hadeeth itself is *saheeh*.'
16 Abdul Razzaq 2530, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2411, Ahmad 18189, and Tahawi 1/196.
17 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2412.
18 Tabarani in *al M'ujam al Awsat* 1030 and in *al M'ujam al Kabeer* 10280.
19 Shahr M'aansi al Aathar 1/197.
20 Abu Dawood 728. Imam Nimawi 320 classified it *hasan*. For details of Imam Nimawi's life, learning and works see the biographies section at the end of the book.
21 Fath al Qadeer 1/288.
till the shoulders, earlobes, and the top of the ears will be reconciled. This explanation is confirmed by the following hadith:

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujur relates that he observed the Prophet when he stood up for salah. He raised his hands until they were close to his shoulders, made his thumbs level with his ears, and then pronounced the takbeer.  

The raising of the hands in the manner explained above is the known view and practice of the Hanafi scholars and the later Malikis. It is also the optional practice of Imam Ahmad and the last known view of Imam Shafiee.

Imam Nawawi writes in his commentary of Saheeh Muslim,

'As for the manner of raising the hands, the best known view in our madhhab and the madhhab of the majority of the scholars is that he should raise his hands to his shoulders in such a way that his fingers are in line with the top of his ears, his thumbs are parallel to his ear lobes, and his palms to his shoulders. In this way Shafiee reconciled the different narrations of the hadith and the people approved this of him.'

It is permissible to raise the hands before the takbeer as in the above hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujur, and in the hadith of Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Saidee quoted later. It is also permissible to raise them together with the takbeer as mentioned in the hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujur recorded by Abu Dawood. Both methods are permissible but the Hanafi ulama have preferred the first option of raising the hands before the takbeer.

---

22 Abu Dawood 724.
23 Imam Nawawi was a follower of the Shafiee school of fiqh.
24 See the following page.
25 Abu Dawood 725.
26 There is also a third possibility of raising the hands after saying the takbeer as may be understood from the hadith of Sayyiduna Malik bin al Huwayrith in Muslim, but Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri says in his Arabic commentary of Bukhari, Faidh al Bari that this has never remained the practice of any one in the ummah. See the biographies section at the end of the book for details of Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri's life, learning and work.
27 The fingers are to be spread out in ruk's whilst grasping the knees, and kept tightly together in sujud. Apart from these two instances the fingers are to be left in their natural position in salah, not held too tightly together and not too spread out. See the hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujur later under the sub-heading 'Grasping your knees with the fingers outspread.' Note that this is for men. Women should try to keep their fingers together in all the postures of salah. See Chapter 13 in Part Three for details.
28 Hakim 856 and Baihaqi 2317. Hakim declared it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed.
29 Bukhari 717.
30 Saeed bin Mansoor as quoted in Muntaka al Akhbair 2/194 and Fath al Bari 2/295. Hafidh Ibn Hajar adds that its narrators are authentic. Also reported by Baihaqi 3541.
Sayyiduna Anas narrates that the Prophet said, 'Oh Anas! Focus your gaze where you will prostrate'.

Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Sufyan al Thawri, Imam Muhammad, Hasan bin Hayy, Imam Shafiee and their followers all say that it is desirable to focus one's gaze at one's place of prostration.

You should then say the consecrating takbeer (takbeerat al tahreemah).

Allah says in the Holy Quran:

وَذَٰلِكَ اسْمُ رَبِّكَ الْعَظِيمِ

And (who) mentions the name of his Lord and prays.

Sayyiduna Ali narrates that the Prophet said, 'The key to salah is purity, its consecration is takbeer, and its deconsecrating act is the salam.'

Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Saidi says, 'When the Prophet would stand for prayer, he would face the qiblah, raise his hands and say Allahu Akbar.'

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that when the Prophet would stand up for salah he would say the takbeer when standing, then whilst bowing for ruk'u. He would then read 'Sami Allahu li man Hamidah' (Allah has heard the one who praised him) when rising from ruk'u. Whilst standing he would say 'Rabbaa lukal Hamd' (Oh Allah! All praise belongs to you.) He would then say the takbeer when falling into prostration and again when rising. He would do this throughout the salah until he completed it. He would also say the takbeer when standing up from the sitting of the second rak'ah.

Ibrahim al Nakhi says, 'Whoever does not say the takbeer when beginning salah then he is not in salah.'

There is no disagreement among the scholars that the takbeerat al tahreemah is obligatory, and without it the salah is not valid.

And placing your right palm over the back of your left hand, wrist and lower arm.

Sayyiduna Sahl bin Sa'd relates that people were commanded to fasten the right hand over the left in salah. Abu Hazim (the narrator from Sahl) says, 'I only know that he (Sahl bin Sa'd) is ascribing this directly to the Prophet."

As part of a longer hadith Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr also narrates that the Prophet placed his right hand on the back of his left hand, the wrist and the lower arm.

---

31 Baithaqi 3545. Muhaddith Dhaifah Ahmad Uthmani quotes (666) from Azizi that Daitami has narrated this hadeeth in his Musnad al Firdaus and that it is hasan li ghairih. He also quotes Ibn Hajar Makki who says that the hadeeth has a number of chains that make it eligible for the rank of hasan.

32 For details of his life and learning see the biographies section at the end of the book.

33 For details of his life and learning see the biographies section at the end of the book.

34 For details of his life, learning and works see the biographies section at the end of the book.

35 al An'aa 18/15.

36 Abdul Razzaq 2539, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2378, Ahmad 1009, Ibn Majah 275, Abu Dawood 61 & 618, and Tirmidhi 3. Imam Nawawi has declared its iṣnaad saheeh in al Majm'ū' 3/240. Hukım has also narrated it (457) on the authority of Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri saying that it is saheeh. Dhahabi agreed with him.

37 Ibn Majah 803. Imam Nimawi declares it hasan (312).

38 Bukhari 756.

39 Imam Muhammad in Kitab al Aathar 74.

40 Rahmat al Urnmah fi Ikhilaf al Aimmah, p29.

41 Malik 378 and Bukhari 707.

42 Ibn Khuzaimah 480 and Baithaqi 2325. Imam Nimawi has classified it saheeh (323).
Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud reports that he was once praying salah having placed his left hand on his right. The Prophet saw him and placed his right hand over his left.  

Qabeesah bin Hulb narrates from his father who says: "The Prophet would lead us in prayer and would clasp his left hand with his right hand."  

The ahadeeth related to the fastening of the hands contain both words: 'akhh and 'wadth' meaning 'grasping' and 'placing' respectively. Both methods are permissible. One may spread his right palm on the left wrist and lower arm, or grasp the left wrist bone with the right hand. One may also combine the two methods by alternating them in different salah as some Hanafi ulama have preferred (such as Imam Shurambulali), or by encircling the left wristbone with the right thumb and small finger, and placing the remaining fingers on the lower left arm as explained by other Hanafi ulama and quoted by Hafidh Badr al Deen Aini in Umdat al Qari, his commentary of Bukhari.  

You should position both hands below the navel. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says: "I saw the Prophet placing his right hand over his left in prayer, below the navel."  

Sayyiduna Ali says, ‘It is part of the sunnah of prayer to place the palm over the palm below the navel.’  

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah says, ‘The positioning of the hands upon the hands in prayer is below the navel.’  

Although these are the words of Sayyiduna Ali and Abu Hurairah, they are equivalent to the direct command of the Prophet himself because, according to the view adopted by the majority of scholars, statements of the Sahabah such as ‘we were commanded to do this’, ‘we were forbidden to do this’ or ‘it is sunnah to do so’ are all to be placed in the category of mar'ju hadith. It is inconceivable that the Sahabah would make such categorical statements without having seen or heard something to the same effect from the Prophet.  

In the light of this principle, the Hanbali scholar Ibn Qudamah concludes in his famous work al Mughni: ‘This practice goes back to the sunnah of the Prophet’.  

Both these hadith which as explained above are in the category of mar'ju, are supported by the other narrations of the Sahabah and Tabi’un.  

---

Footnotes:  
43 Ibn Majah 811, Abu Dawood 755, Nasai 888 and Baihaqi 2327. Imam Nawawi has declared it saheeh in al Majm’u 3/313.  
44 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3934, Ahmad 21467. Ibn Majah 809 and Tirmidhi 252. Imam Timidhi adds that it is a hasan hadith.  
45 For details of his life, learning and works see the biographies section at the end of the book.  
46 Umdat al Qari 5/279.  
47 This is only for men. Women should place their hands on their bosoms. See Chapter 13 in Part Three for a further explanation.  
48 Ibn Abi Shaibah. Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubughah says in his tahreer of the ahadeeth of al Bukhari that this hadith has a very good sanad. Allamah Hashim Siddiqui also says in his Dirham al Surah p84 that its sanad is strong. Imam Nimawi says that its sanad is saheeh (330). Imam Abu Tabyib Madani also says in his commentary of Tirmidhi 1/277 (published by al Matba’ al Nadhami, Kanpur, India.  
49 1279 AH) that this is a hadith which is saheeh in both sanad and text and is thus a basis for evidence. Qadhi ‘Abid Sindhi also says in Tawwili al Anwaar that its narrators are authentic. See Chapter 3 in Part Three for a detailed discussion on this hadith. Also for details of the lives, learning and works of Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubughah, Allamah Hashim Siddiqui and Qadhi ‘Abid Sindhi see the biographies section at the end of the book.  
50 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3954, Ahmad 877. Abu Dawood 756, Daraqutni 1089 & 1090, and Baihaqi 2341 & 2342. Also narrated by Abu Hafs bin Shaheen in his al Sunnah and by Badiu in his Musnad as mentioned by Allamah Hashim Siddiqui in Dirham al Surah, p32 quoting from Ranz al Umud. Reported also by Razeen as quoted by the author of Jam’ al Fawaid.  
51 Abu Dawood 758 and Ibn Battah as quoted by Allamah Hashim Siddiqui in Dirham al Surah, p36.  
52 Tahreer al Ravi 1/188.  
53 Most scholars have declared them to be dhanafa because of Abdul Rahman bin Ishaq al Kufi but Muhammad Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani has classified them hasan in his I’tibaa.
Hajaj bin Hasan said, ‘I heard Abu Mijlaz\textsuperscript{53} say or I asked him how should I place my hands?’ He replied, ‘He (the individual performing the prayer) should place the inside of his right palm on his left hand and position both of them below the navel.’\textsuperscript{54}

Ibrahim al Nakhi reports that the Prophet ﷺ would rest one of his hands on the other in salah, humbling himself before Allah. Imam Muhammad (the narrator of this hadith) says, ‘He would place the palm of his right hand on his left wrist below the navel. The wrist would thus be in the middle of the palm.’\textsuperscript{55}

Ibrahim al Nakhi also says, ‘He (the individual performing the prayer) should place his right hand on his left, below the navel.’\textsuperscript{56}

Imam Tirmidhi says in his Sunan after narrating the above hadith of Qabeesah:

\begin{quote}
\begin{flushright}
Hajaj bin Hasan said, ‘I heard Abu Mijlaz say or I asked him how should I place my hands?’ He replied, ‘He (the individual performing the prayer) should place the inside of his right palm on his left hand and position both of them below the navel.’

Ibrahim al Nakhi reports that the Prophet ﷺ would rest one of his hands on the other in salah, humbling himself before Allah. Imam Muhammad (the narrator of this hadith) says, ‘He would place the palm of his right hand on his left wrist below the navel. The wrist would thus be in the middle of the palm.’

Ibrahim al Nakhi also says, ‘He (the individual performing the prayer) should place his right hand on his left, below the navel.’

Imam Tirmidhi says in his Sunan after narrating the above hadith of Qabeesah:

\textsuperscript{53} Ibn Abi Shaibah 3942. Ibn al Turkumani says 2/47 that it has been narrated with a very good sanad. Imam Nimawi (331) and Muhaddith Yusuf Binnouri 2/44 both say that its isnaad is saheeh. It has also been mentioned by Imam Abu Dawood but without a sanad (757). For details of the lives, learning and works of both Ibn al Turkumani and Muhaddith Yusuf Binnouri see the biographies section at the end of the book.

\textsuperscript{54} Imam Muhammad in his Kitab al Aathaar 120.

\textsuperscript{55} Ibn Abi Shaibah 3939 and Imam Muhammad in his Kitab al Aathaar 121. Imam Nimawi says that its isnaad is hasan (332).

\textsuperscript{56} ‘Fastening the hands in prayer is the practice of the learned Sahabah, Tabi’in and Tabi’i Tabieen. They are of the view that the individual performing the prayer should place his right hand on his left. Some of them then say that he should position them above the navel whilst others contend that they should be placed below the navel. All is permissible in their view.’

‘Fastening the hands below the navel was the practice of Abu Mijlaz, Ibrahim Nakhi, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad bin Hasan al Shaibani and their followers, Sufyan al Thawri, Isqaq bin Rahuyah, and Abu Ishaq al Marwazi from amongst the Shafiites. It has also been quoted from Saeed bin Jubair, Abu Ubaid, Ibn Jareer and Dawood al Dhahiri. It is also the most famous narration of Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal and the preferred practice of the Hanbali ulama.’

\begin{quote}
\textit{Then quietly read thana.}

Allah says in the Holy Quran:

\begin{center}
\begin{quote}
And hyme the praise of thy Lord when you stand.\
\end{quote}
\end{center}

Dhahkah says in the commentary of this verse, ‘This means to say:’

\begin{center}
\begin{quote}
You are Glorified oh Allah and praised. Blessed is your Name and Elevated is your Majesty. There is no God besides you.
\end{quote}
\end{center}

Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri narrates that when the Prophet ﷺ would begin salah he would say Subhanak Allahuumma…’

\begin{quote}
\textsuperscript{57} Tirmidhi 252.

\textsuperscript{58} See Chapter 3 in Part Three for a detailed discussion of this topic.

\textsuperscript{59} al Tor 52/48.

\textsuperscript{60} Ibn Abi Shaibah 2402 and Ibn Jareer al Tabari 32403 & 32404.
\end{quote}
The same hadeeth has also been reported from Ummul Mu’mineen Aisha  and Sayyiduna Anas  as well as other Sahabah  

Abdah reports that Sayyiduna Umar bin al Khattab  would recite the following words loudly (in salah) ‘Subhanak Allahumma...’  

Aswad reports that when Sayyiduna Umar bin al Khattab  would begin salah he would say Subhanak Allahumma...”  

It is also narrated as being the practice of Sayyiduna Uthman, Sayyiduna Abu Bakr,  and Sayyiduna Abdallah bin Mas’ud  

There are a number of other duaas that have been mentioned in the abahadeeth. These are also permissible but the above duaa is preferred because this is what the companions chose and occasionally read out aloud to teach people. This is evidence of it being better and the preferred sunnah of the Prophet . 

This is the view of Alqamah, Aswad, Ibrahim al Nakhi, Ataa, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Muhammad, Sufyan al Thawri, Ishaq bin Rahuyah, Imam Ahmad and their followers as well as many others. 

61 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2401, Ahmad 11260, Ibn Majah 804 and Nasai 889. Hafidh Haithami says 2/265 that its narrators are authentic. 
63 Abu Ya’la 3733, Tabari in al Migam al Aweis as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/107. Hafidh Haithami adds that its narrators are authentic. Also reported by Daruqutni 1135. Ibn Qudarrah says in al Mugtani 2/27 that its narrators are all authentic. 
64 Muslim 399. 
65 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2395, Tahawi 1/198 and Bihaiqi 2350. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (337). 
66 Daruqutni 1141. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is hasan (338). 
67 Saeed bin Mansoor as quoted by al Shawkani in Nell al Awoor 2/202. Also reported by Ibn Abi Shaibah 2393. 
68 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2391; and Ibn al Mundhir as quoted by Abdus Salam Ibn Taymiyyah in al Montaqi 2/203. 

After narrating the above hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abu Saeed  Imam Tirmidhi says, ‘This is the practice of most of the people of learning from amongst the Tabi’in and others.’

Ta’awwudh. 
Allah says in the Holy Quran: 

Thus when you recite the Quran, seek the protection of Allah from the accursed Shaitan. 

Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri  reports that before reciting the Prophet  would pray . 

Aswad says, ‘Sayyiduna Umar  started salah, said the takbeer and then recited.’  

Abu Wail reports that they (the companions ) would say the ta’awwudh and basmalah silently in salah. 

And basmalah. 
Sayyiduna Anas bin Malik  says, ‘I prayed salah behind the Prophet , Abu Bakr, Umar and Uthman  and I did not hear one of them recite Bismillah al Rahman al Raheem loudly.’  

69 al Nahl 1698. 
70 Abdul Razzaq 2389. 
71 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2455. 
72 Saeed bin Mansoor as quoted by Imam Nimawi 340. He adds that its isnad is saheeh. 
73 Malik 179, Muslim 399 and Nasai 907.
The son of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mughaffal narrates, ‘My father heard me reading Bismillah al Rahaman al Raheem in salah. He said, ‘Oh my son. An innovator are you? Beware of innovation.’ (The son of Abdullah bin Mughaffal adds, ‘I have not seen anyone amongst the Prophet’s companions to whom innovation was more repulsive than my father.’) His father said, ‘I have prayed with the Prophet, Abu Bakr, Umar and Uthman, and I did not hear any one of them recite Bismillah al Rahaman al Raheem, therefore do not recite it. When you pray salah read al Hamdu Lillahi Rabbi Aalameen.’

Saying Bismillah silently is the view and practice of the four caliphs, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud and many others amongst the Sahabah and Tabi’in. It is also the view and practice of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal and their followers, as well as Ishaq, Abu Ubaid, Ibn al Mubarak, Sufyan al Thawri, Ibn Abi Layla and Hasan bin Hayy.

**Followed by a recitation of Surah al Fatihah.**

Sayyiduna Ubada bin Samit reports that the Prophet said, ‘There is no salah for one who does not recite ‘the opening chapter of the book’.

Wahb bin Kaysan reports that he heard Sayyiduna Jabir bin Abdullah say, ‘He who prays one rak’ah in which he does not recite Surah al Fatihah has in fact not prayed at all, unless he is behind an Imam.’

AHadeeth such as those mentioned above which stress the obligation of Surah al Fatihah are for the Imam or the individual, not the muqtadi. Imam Tirmidhi has quoted Imam Ahmad who commented on the above hadith (There is no salah for one ...) by saying ‘This is if he is alone.’ This is also the view of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Malik, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, their followers and the clear majority of the ulama.

**On completing Surah al Fatihah you should say Ameen silently, regardless of whether you are alone or praying behind the Imam.**

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that the Prophet said, ‘When the Imam says “Ghairil Maqddhoobi Alaihim WaladhaAleeen”, say Ameen. For one whose Ameen coincides with that of the angels, he will have all his past sins forgiven.

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that the Prophet said, ‘When the Imam says “Ghairil Maqddhoobi Alaihim WaladhaAleeen” say Ameen. And indeed the angels say Ameen and the Imam says Ameen. So one whose Ameen coincides with that of the angels, he will have his past sins forgiven.

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah relates that the Prophet would teach us saying, ‘Do not try to outdo the Imam. When he pronounces the takbeer, you say it also; when he recites ‘WaladhaAleeen’ then say Ameen; when he performs the ruk’u you do it also; and when he says ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’ say ‘Allahumma Rabbana lakaal Hamd’.

As can be deduced from the above hadeeth the Ameen should be said silently just as ‘Allahumma Rabbana lakaal Hamd’ is said silently.

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says, ‘The Prophet led us in salah. When he recited “Ghairil Maqddhoobi Alaihim WaladhaAleeen” he said Ameen silently. (Literally, ‘He kept his voice silent.’) He also

---

74 Ahmad 16345. Ibn Majah 815. Tirmidhi 244 and Tahawi 1/202. Imam Tirmidhi says that it is hasan.
75 Bukhari 723 and Muslim 394.
76 Malik 188 and Tirmidhi 313. Imam Tirmidhi says that the hadith is hasan saheeh.
77 Malik 196, Bukhari 749 and Muslim 410.
78 Ahmad 7174, Darimi 1246, Nasai 927 and Ibn Hibban 1801. Imam Nimawi says that its iusul is saheeh (376).
79 Muslim 415.
placed his right hand on his left hand, and said the salam to his right and left.\textsuperscript{80} 

Ibrahim al Nakhai says, 'There are five things which the Imam says silently: "Subhanak Allahumma...", ta‘awwudh, basmalah, Ameen, and "Allahumma Rabbana wa lakaal Hand".'\textsuperscript{81} 

Abu Wail reports that Sayyiduna Ali  and Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud  would not say the basmalah, ta‘awwudh or Ameen loudly.\textsuperscript{82} 

Abu Wail says that Sayyiduna Umar  and Sayyiduna Ali  would not say the basmalah, ta‘awwudh or Ameen loudly.\textsuperscript{83} 

Saying Ameen silently was the view and practice of Sayyiduna Umar, Sayyiduna Ali, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud , Ibrahim al Nakhai, Sh’abi,\textsuperscript{84} Ibrahim al Taimi, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Malik, Imam Muhammad, their followers and the people of Kufah. It was also the last view of Imam Shafiee, and Ibn Jareer al

Tabari says as quoted by Ibn al Turkumani\textsuperscript{85} that this was the practice of most of the Sahabah  and Tabi‘un.\textsuperscript{86} 

Then repeat the basmalah and recite any other surah, or at least one long verse or three small verses from any part of the Quran.

Allah says in the Quran:

\begin{align*}
\text{فَأَقْرَعُوا مَا كَانَتَ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ}
\end{align*}

Thus, recite whatever may be possible from the Quran.\textsuperscript{87} 

Sayyiduna Abu Qatadah  narrates that the Prophet  would recite Surah al Fatihah and another surah in the first two rak‘aat of Dhuhr and Asr salah, and at times he would (read loud enough and) allow us to hear a verse. In the second two rak‘aat he would read only Surah al Fatihah.\textsuperscript{88} 

Sayyiduna Ubadah bin al Samit  narrates that the Prophet  said, 'There is no salah for one who does not recite the mother (essential chapter al Fatihah) of the book and more.'\textsuperscript{89} 

Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri  relates that the Prophet  said, 'The key to salah is purity, its consecration is takbeer, and its deconsecrating act is the salam. And there is no salah for one who does not recite 'Alhamdu lillah...' (the opening chapter of the book) and a surah in an obligatory or other (prayer).'\textsuperscript{90}

\textsuperscript{80} Abu Dawood Tayalisi 1024, Ahmad 18363, Tirmidhi 248; Tabarani in al M‘ujam al Kabeer 22/43 no 109, 22/9 no 3, & 22/45 no 112; Duruqunii 1256, Hakim 2913 and Buhhaqi 2447. Hakim declared it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed.

\textsuperscript{81} Imam Muhammad in his Kitab al Aathaar 83 (mentioning four instead of five); Abdul Razzaaq 2597, and Ibn Abi Shaabah 88 49. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (386). Muhaiddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani says that its narrators are authentic (724).

\textsuperscript{82} Tabarani in al M‘ujam al Kabeer as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/108. Hafidh Haithami says that the sanad contains Abu Sa‘d al Baqqal who is authentic and a mu deadlock. Muhaiddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani classifies it as saheeh 2/250.

\textsuperscript{83} Ibn Jareer al Tabari in Tadlisheb al Aathaar as quoted by Ibn al Turkumani 2/70. Also reported by Tahawi 1/204. Muhaiddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani says that its narrators are those of the six books of hadeeth except for Abu Sa‘d al Baqqal who is authentic and a mudallis.

\textsuperscript{84} For details of his life and learning see the biographies section at the end of the book.

\textsuperscript{85} Ibn al Turkumani 2/85.

\textsuperscript{86} For a more detailed discussion of this topic see Chapter 5 in Part Three.

\textsuperscript{87} al Muzzammil 73/20.

\textsuperscript{88} Muslim 451, Bukhari 725.

\textsuperscript{89} Muslim 394, Abu Dawood 822 and Ibn Hibban 1783.

\textsuperscript{90} Tirmidhi 238. He adds that it is hasan.
If you are praying in a congregation then you should not read anything behind the Imam, especially whilst he is audibly reciting the Quran.

Allah says:

\[ \text{And when the Quran is recited, listen to it attentively and remain silent, that you may receive mercy.} \]

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah Ḥ says, 'The Prophet Ḥ turned around after a salah in which he had recited loudly. He enquired, "Has any one of you recited (behind me)?" A man replied, "I did." The Prophet Ḥ said, "I say: what is it with me? I am being contested for the Quran." After the people heard this from the Prophet Ḥ they stopped reciting with him (behind him) in those salah in which he would pray loudly.'

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah Ḥ reports that the Prophet Ḥ said, 'The Imam has been appointed so that he may be followed. Thus, when he says the takbeer, you say it also, and when he recites remain silent.'

Sayyiduna Abu Musa al Ash’ari Ḥ says, 'The Prophet Ḥ taught us that "When you stand up for prayer one of you should lead the rest, and when the Imam recites remain silent."'

Abu Wail reports that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud Ḥ was asked about reciting behind the Imam. He replied, 'Remain silent for the recitation (of the Imam). For indeed there is a duty in salah for which the Imam is sufficient for you.'

Nafi' reports that when Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar Ḥ would be asked, 'Should one recite behind the Imam?' he would reply, 'When one of you prays behind the Imam then the Imam's recitation is sufficient for him. When he prays alone he should recite.' Nafi' adds, 'Abdullah bin Umar Ḥ would not recite behind the Imam.'

Sayyiduna Jabir bin Abdallah Ḥ relates that the Prophet Ḥ said, 'One who prays behind an Imam, the recitation of the Imam is sufficient for him.'

The above hadith has also been reported from the Prophet Ḥ on the authority of the noble Sahabah Anas, Abdullah bin Abbas, Abu Hurairah, Abu Saeed al Khudri, Abdullah bin Umar, Ali, and Abu al Dardaa Ḥ.

---

91 al A'raaf 7/204.
92 Malik 194, Ahmad 7760, Ibn Majah 849, Abu Dawood 826, Tirmidhi 312 and Nasai 919.
93 Ahmad 9151. Also reported by Ahmad bin Manee' and Abd bin Humaid in their Musnads with a saheeh sunna as quoted by Bouscerc in Mishbah al Zayaajah Chapter 150, hadith 312. Narrated also by Ibn Majah 846, Abu Dawood 603, Nasai 921 & 922 and Tahawi 1/217. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh. Allamah Abdul Hayy Lucknawi categorically concludes in his Imam al Kalam, p165 that the hadith is authentic after quoting a number of ulama who have declared it saheeh including Imam Ahmad. For details of Allamah Abdul Hayy Lucknawi’s life, learning and works see the biographies section at the end of the book.
94 Ahmad 19224, Muslin 404 (as part of a longer hadith), and Ibn Majah 847.
Ahadeeth such as those above stressing the obligation of Surah al Fatihah are for the Imam or the individual, not the muqtadi. Imam Tirmidhi has quoted Imam Ahmad who commented on the above hadeeth (There is no salah for one ...) by saying ‘This is if he is alone.’ This is also the view of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Malik, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, their followers and the clear majority of the ulama.\(^{105}\)

Wahb bin Kaysan reports that he heard Sayyiduna Jabir bin Abdullah \(\infty\) say, ‘He who prays one rak‘ah in which he does not recite Surah al Fatihah has in fact not prayed at all, unless he is behind an Imam.’\(^{106}\)

**When this recitation is finished, repeat the takbeer.**

Abu Salamah relates that Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah \(\infty\) would lead them in salah, and pronounce the takbeer whenever he rose or fell (into rak‘u or prostration). Having completed the salah he would turn around and say, ‘Amongst you my salah is the closest to that of the Prophet \(\infty\).’\(^{107}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud \(\infty\) says, ‘The Prophet \(\infty\) would say the takbeer at the time of each rising, descent, standing, and sitting, and so would Abu Bakr, Umar and Uthman \(\infty\).’\(^{108}\)

**And, without raising your hands**

Alqamah reports that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud \(\infty\) said, ‘Should I not lead you in salah in the manner of the Prophet \(\infty\)?’ He then prayed and did not raise his hands except in the beginning.\(^{109}\)

---

\(^{105}\) See Chapter 4 in Part Three for further details on this topic.

\(^{106}\) Malik 188 and Tirmidhi 313.

\(^{107}\) Malik 168, Bukhari 752 and Muslim 392.

\(^{108}\) Ahmad 3652, Darimi 1249, Tirmidhi 235 and Nasai 1149. Imam Tirmidhi says that it is a hadith saheeh hadeeth.

\(^{109}\) Imam Abu Hanifah as recorded in \(\textit{Jam\'i al Mushannaf} 1355\). Also reported by Ibn Abi Shaibah in \(\textit{al Musannaf} 2441\) as well as his \(\textit{Musnad} 323\); Ahmad 3672, Abu
Abbad the son of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Zubair  relates that when starting salah the Prophet  would raise his hands in the beginning and not raise them again at any time until he completed his prayer.\(^{114}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud  says, 'I prayed behind the Prophet  and Abu Bakr, and Umar  and they did not raise their hands except when beginning salah.'\(^{115}\)

Aswad says, 'I prayed salah with Umar bin al Khattab  and he did not raise his hands during any part of salah except in the beginning.' Abdul Malik (one of the narrators) says, 'I also observed Sh'abi, Ibrahim, and Ishaq not raising their hands except when beginning their salah.'\(^{116}\)

Ibrahim al Nakhtai says, 'Abdullah bin Mas'ud  would not raise his hands in any part of salah except in the beginning.'\(^{117}\)

Aasim bin Kulaib narrates from his father that Sayyiduna Ali  would raise his hands at the first takbeer of salah. He would not raise them again after this.\(^{118}\)

\(^{114}\) Baihaqi in his al Khilafiyat as quoted by Hafidh Zailae 1721. Allamah Anwar Shah al Kasimii says as quoted in Ma'arif al Sunan 2/496, 'I have researched the narrators of its isnad and the conclusion of the research was that it is saheeh.' He also added, 'It is a sajyid narrated hadeeth.'

\(^{115}\) Abu Ya'laa 5039, Daruqutni 1120, and Baihaqi 2534. Ibn al Turkumani says that this is a sajyid supporting narration. The hadeeth contains Muhammad bin Jabir bin Sayyar who has been declared weak by some, reliable by others. Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani 367 discusses his position at length before concluding that his hadeeth is at least hasan.

\(^{116}\) Ibn Abi Shaibah 2454 and Tahawi 1/227. Imam Tahawi says that it is a saheeh hadeeth. Ibn al Turkumani says 2/109 that this isnad is saheeh according to the conditions of Muslim. Hafidh Ibn Hajar says in ad Dirayah 1/13 that its narrators are authentic.

\(^{117}\) Abdul Razzaq 2533-2535, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2443 and Tahawi 1/227. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is sajyid (very good) and mursal.

\(^{118}\) Imam Muhammad in his al Muwatta 109, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2442, Tahawi 1/225 and Baihaqi 2535. Hafidh Zailae says that it is a saheeh hadeeth 1406. Hafidh Ibn Hajar says in al Dirayah 1/113 that its narrators are authentic and Hafidh Badr al

Abu Ishaq says, 'The companions of both Abdullah bin Mas'ud and Ali  would not raise their hands except in the beginning of salah.' Wakee' adds, 'And they would not raise them again.'\(^{119}\)

Mujahid says, 'I prayed salah behind Ibn Umar  and he would not raise his hands in salah except at the time of the first takbeer.'\(^{120}\)

Abdul Azeez bin Hakeem says, 'I saw Ibn Umar  raise his hands to the level of his ears at the time of the first takbeer in the beginning of salah, and he did not raise them apart from this.'\(^{121}\)

Husain bin Abdul Rahman relates, 'Amr bin Murrah and I visited Ibrahim al Nakhtai. Amr said, "Alqamah bin Wail al Hadhrami narrated to me from his father  that he prayed salah with the Prophet . He saw him raise his hands when he said the takbeer, when he bowed into ruk'u and when he rose therefrom." Ibrahim replied, "I do not know. He may possibly not have seen the Prophet  pray except on that day and thus remembered this of him. (Otherwise) did Ibn Mas'ud  and his companions not remember this of him? I have not heard it from any one of them. They would only raise their hands in the beginning of salah when saying the takbeer."'\(^{122}\)
Sayyiduna Jabir bin Samurah says, “The Prophet came out to us saying: ‘Why is it that I see you raising your hands as though they are the tails of obstinate horses? Remain calm in salah.’\textsuperscript{123}

Abu Bakr bin Ayyash says, ‘I have not seen a single fazeeh do it: raise his hands at any time other than the first takbeer.’\textsuperscript{124}

Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad al Uthmani writes,

“This shows that the raising of the hands when bowing into ruk'u and when rising from it was most likely not practiced widely during the time of the Tabi’un, for Abu Bakr bin Ayyash was one of the foremost Tabi’i Tabieen. Malik who was also a prominent Tabi’i Tabieen says as is recorded in al Mudawwanah al Kubra, “I do not know of raising the hands in any takbeer of salah, neither whilst rising or bowing except in the beginning when he should raise his hands slightly.”\textsuperscript{125} Ibn al Qasim also says, “Raising the hands was weak in the view of Malik except in the beginning of salah.” This also shows that the raising of the hands was generally not practiced during that time.”\textsuperscript{126}

Imam Nimawi says:

“The Sahabah and those who came after them differed in this regard. As for the four caliphs, the raising of the hands has not been proven from them except in the first takbeer of tahreemah. And Allah knows best.”\textsuperscript{127}

After narrating the above hadith of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud Imam Timidhi comments:

\textsuperscript{123} Ahmad 20450 & 20522, Muslim 430, Abu Dawood 1000 and Nasai 1184. For a further explanation of this hadeth see Chapter 6 in Part Three.

\textsuperscript{124} Tahawi 1/228. Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani says 827, ‘Its narrators are those of Bukhari except Ibn Abi Dawood and he is thiqah (authentic).’ Muhaddith Yusuf al Binneuri says 2/494 that its sanad is strong. Abu Bakr bin Ayyash is one of the narrators of Bukhari and one of the teachers of Sufyan al Thawri, Ibn al Mubarak and Imam Ahmad.

\textsuperscript{125} al Mudawwanah al Kubra 1/165.

\textsuperscript{126} I’tiqa al Sunan 376.

\textsuperscript{127} Aathhaar al Sunan p215.

‘There is a narration of the same meaning on the authority of Baraa bin Azib. Abdullah bin Mas’ud’s hadith is hasan, and many of the Prophet’s learned companions are of the same view, i.e., the hands should not be raised during salah except once in the beginning. This is also the view of Sufyan al Thawri and the people of Kufah.’\textsuperscript{128}

Not raising the hands except in the beginning of salah was the known practice of Sayyiduna Abu Bakr, Sayyiduna Umar, Sayyiduna Ali and Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud as well as many others from amongst the learned Sahabah as mentioned by Timidhi above. It has also been reported from Sayyiduna Ibn Umar and others. From amongst the Tabi’un it was the known practice of the companions of Sayyiduna Ali and Sayyiduna Ibn Mas’ud, Aswad bin Yazeed, Alqama bin Qais, Ibrahim al Nakhai, Khaithamah, Qais bin Abi Hazim, Amam al Sh’abi,\textsuperscript{129} Abu Ishaq al Sabiee, Wakee, Aasim bin Kulaib, virtually all of the fujahah and people of Kufah, and many in other cities. It is also the view and practice of Mughirah, Hasan bin Salih, Sufyan al Thawri, Hasan bin Hayy, Wakee, Ishaq bin Abi Israel, Imam Abu Hanafah, Imam Malik, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad and their followers.\textsuperscript{129}

**Bow down into ruk'u.**

Allah says in the Holy Quran:

\begin{quote}
Oh you who believe! Bow down and prostrate, and worship your Lord.\textsuperscript{130}
\end{quote}

**Grasping your knees with the fingers outspread, and keeping the back straight, not arching it, neither raising the head nor**

\textsuperscript{128} For the narratives describing the practice of the above Tabi’un see al Musannaf of Ibn Abi Shaihah 2444-2454.

\textsuperscript{129} See Chapter 6 in Part Three for a detailed discussion of this topic.

\textsuperscript{130} al Hajj 22/77.
lowering it. Ensure that your arms are also kept free of your body.\textsuperscript{131}

Salim al Barrad relates in the longer hadeeth describing Sayyiduna Ugbah bin Amr’s\textsuperscript{122} demonstration of the Prophet’s\textsuperscript{9} prayer\textsuperscript{122} that ‘When he performed the \textit{ruku}, he placed his palms on his knees with his fingers slightly lower, and distanced his arms from his body until he was motionless’\textsuperscript{133}.

Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas\textsuperscript{9} says, ‘When the Prophet\textsuperscript{9} would bow down into \textit{ruku} (his back would be so straight that) if water was poured onto his back it would settle there.’\textsuperscript{134}

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah\textsuperscript{9} reports that once a man entered the \textit{masjid} and performed his \textit{salah} whilst the Prophet\textsuperscript{9} was in the corner of the \textit{masjid}. He then greeted the Prophet\textsuperscript{9}. The Prophet\textsuperscript{9} returned the greeting and said, ‘Return and pray because you have not prayed.’ The man went back, prayed and then greeted the Prophet\textsuperscript{9} again. The Prophet\textsuperscript{9} returned the greeting for a second time and said, ‘Return and pray because you have not prayed.’ On the third time the man said, ‘Teach me.’ The Prophet\textsuperscript{9} said, ‘When you stand for prayer, complete the \textit{wudhu}, face the \textit{qiblah}, pronounce the \textit{takbeer}, and recite whatever Quran you may know. Then bow down until you are motionless in \textit{ruku}. Now stand erect and then fall down and settle into prostration. Then rise from your prostration and sit motionless. Then fall down again and settle into prostration. Then rise until you stand up straight. Do this throughout your \textit{salah}.’\textsuperscript{135}

Sayyiduna Abu Qatada\textsuperscript{9} relates that the Prophet\textsuperscript{9} said, ‘The worst of all thieves is one who steals from his \textit{salah}.’ They asked, ‘Oh Prophet of Allah! How does he steal from his \textit{salah}?’ He replied, ‘He does not complete its \textit{ruku} or \textit{sujud}, and nor does he straighten his back in \textit{ruku} or \textit{sujud}.’\textsuperscript{136}

The same hadeeth has also been reported on the authority of the noble \textit{ Sahabah} Sayyiduna Nu’man bin Murrah,\textsuperscript{137} Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah,\textsuperscript{138} and Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri.\textsuperscript{139}

Sayyiduna Ali bin Shaiban\textsuperscript{9} (who was part of a delegation) reports: ‘We came to the Prophet\textsuperscript{9} and pledged our allegiance to him. We prayed behind him, and he noticed a man from the corner of his eye who was not straightening his back in \textit{ruku} and \textit{sujud}. When the Prophet\textsuperscript{9} completed his \textit{salah}, he said, ‘Oh Muslims! There is no \textit{salah} for one who does not straighten his back in \textit{ruku} and \textit{sujud}.’\textsuperscript{140}

Sayyiduna Abu Humaid, Sayyiduna Abu Usa’d, Sayyiduna Sahl bin Sa’d and Sayyiduna Muhammad bin Salamah\textsuperscript{9} came together and discussed the \textit{salah} of the Prophet\textsuperscript{9}. Sayyiduna Abu Humaid said, ‘I am the most knowledgeable of you about the \textit{salah} of the Prophet\textsuperscript{9}. When he would bow down into \textit{ruku} he would place his hands upon his knees as though he was grasping them, and he would bend his arms and distance them from his sides.’\textsuperscript{141}

\textsuperscript{131} Unlike men, in \textit{ruku}, women should tuck their arms into the body and not spread them outward. They should also simply place their hands over their knees with closed fingers, and not grasp them with the fingers spread wide open. See Chapter 13 in Part Three for details.

\textsuperscript{132} See Chapter 1 in Part Three.

\textsuperscript{133} Ahmad 16628, Darimi 1394, Abu Dawood 863 and Nasai 1036. Imam Nimawi says that its \textit{isanad} is \textit{saheeh}.

\textsuperscript{134} Tabarani in \textit{al Mu\'jam al Kabeer} and Abu Ya'laa as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/123 who adds that its narrators are authentic.

\textsuperscript{135} Bukhari 6290 & 760.

\textsuperscript{136} Ahmad 11138, Darimi 1328, Ibn Khuzaimah 663, Tabarani in \textit{al Mu\'jam al Kabeer} 3283 and Hakim 835. Hakim declared it \textit{saheeh} and Dhahabi agreed. Hafidh Haithami also says that its narrators are those of Bukhari.

\textsuperscript{137} Malik 401.

\textsuperscript{138} Ibn Hibban 1885, and Hakim 836 who declared it \textit{saheeh} and Dhahabi agreed.

\textsuperscript{139} Abu Dawood Tayaiisi 2219, Ahmad 11549, and Abu Ya'laa 1311.

\textsuperscript{140} Ahmad 15862, Ibn Majah 871 and Ibn Hibban 1888. Imam Nimawi says that its \textit{isanad} is \textit{saheeh} (420).

\textsuperscript{141} Tirmidhi 260. He adds that the hadeeth is \textit{hasan saheeh}. 
Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr reports that when the Prophet (ﷺ) would bow down into ruk’u he would spread his fingers wide, and when prostrating he would keep them together.\(^{142}\)

The above hadeeth has also been narrated without the mention of the sujud.\(^{143}\)

Sayyiduna Umar (RA) said, ‘The knees are sunnah for you so grasp your knees.’\(^{144}\)

Say tasbeeh for a minimum of three times.

Allah says in the Holy Quran:

Then hymn with praise of your Lord, the Most Great.\(^{145}\)

Sayyiduna Qubah bin Aamir al Juhani (RA) narrates, ‘When the verse ‘And praise the name of your Lord the most great’ was revealed to the Prophet (ﷺ), he said, ‘Place this in your ruk’u.’ And when the verse ‘Praise the name of your Lord the Most High’ was revealed he said, ‘Place this in your prostration.’\(^{146}\)

Sayyiduna Hudhaifah (RA) says that he prayed salah with the Prophet (ﷺ) who would read ‘Subhanna Rabbiallil ‘Ala’ (Praised be my Lord the Most High) in his prostration.\(^{147}\)

Similar ahadeeth about the Prophet’s (ﷺ) own practice have been narrated on the authority of Sayyiduna Abu Bakrah (RA) and Sayyiduna Jubair bin Mutim.\(^{148}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud (RA) relates that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, ‘When one of you bows down into ruk’u he should say ‘Subhanna Rabbiallil ‘Ala’ three times and this is the minimum, and when he falls into prostration he should say ‘Subhanna Rabbiallil ‘Ala’ three times and this is the minimum.’\(^{150}\)

It should be noted that whilst other duas are also quoted in the ahadeeth for ruk’u, sujud, qawmah, and the beginning of salah, etc, the Imam and congregation should preferably only recite the above tasbeeh in fardh salah. Other duas, those that are authentic, should be recited in nafl salah or when one is praying fardh alone.

And then rise again to the standing position (qiyam) saying ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah (Allah hears those who praise Him). You should stand erect and say ‘Allahumma Rabbana wa lakaal Hamd’ (Oh Allah, Our Lord! You are Praised). Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah (RA) narrates that the Prophet (ﷺ) said, ‘When the Imam says “Sami Allahu li man Hamidah” say “Allahumma Rabbana lakaal Hamd”’. For one whose above prayer coincides with that of the angels will have all his past sins forgiven.’\(^{151}\)

\(^{142}\) Ibn Hibban 1917, Tabarani in al M’ujam al Kabeer as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/135; and Bahawi 2695. Hafidh Haithami says that its isnad is hasan.

\(^{143}\) Ibn Khuzaimah 594 and Hakim 814 who declared it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed.

\(^{144}\) Tirmidhi 258 and Nasai 1034. Imam Tirmidhi says the hadeeth is hasan saheeh.

\(^{145}\) al Waqi’ah 56/74.

\(^{146}\) Abu Dawood Tayalisi 1000, Ahmad 16961, Darimi 1305, Ibn Majah 887, Abu Dawood 869, Abu Ya’laa 1378, Ibn Khuzaimah 670, Tahawi 1/235, Ibn Hibban 1895, Tabarani in al M’ujam al Kabeer 889, Hakim 818 and Bahawi 2555. Imam Nawawi says that the hadeeth is hasan as quoted by Mulla Ali Qari in al Mirqat, and Imam Nimawi also declares it hasan (424).

\(^{147}\) Ibn Majah 888, Nasai in al Majtah 1046 and in al Sunan al Kubeer 634, Tahawi 1/235, and Ibn Hibban 1894. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (423).

\(^{148}\) Bazzar as quoted by Hafidh Ibn Hajar in Mukhtasar Zawaid al Bazzar 384, Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is hasan (425).

\(^{149}\) Bazzar as quoted by Hafidh bin Hajar in Mukhtasar Zawaid al Bazzar 383. Also reported by Tabarani in al M’ujam al Kabeer 1572 and in Musnad al Shamiyyeen 1359.

\(^{150}\) Ibn Majah 890, Abu Dawood 886 and Tirmidhi 261.

\(^{151}\) Bukhari 763 and Muslim 409.
Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah also reports that when the Prophet would intend to pray *salah*, he would pronounce the *takbeer* when standing and then when bowing into *ruk'ah*. When he raised his back from *ruk'ah* he would say ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’, and then whilst standing he would say ‘Rabbana lakal Hamd’.¹⁵²

Both ‘Allahumma Rabbana lakal Hamd’ and ‘Rabbana lakal Hamd’ can be recited as shown above. It is also permissible to say ‘Rabbana wa lakal Hamd’ and ‘Allahumma Rabbana wa lakal Hamd’ as found in numerous saheeh ahadeeth. This last wording is preferable according to the Hanafi ulama and also according to Imam Malik as quoted by Ibn al Qasim.¹⁵³

**Members of the congregation should only say ‘Rabbana..’**

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that the Prophet said, ‘When the Imam says ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’ say ‘Allahumma Rabbana lakal Hamd’. For he whose above prayer coincides with that of the angels will have all his past sins forgiven.’¹⁵⁴

Amir al Sh’abi says, ‘The congregation behind the Imam will not say ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’. They will only say ‘Rabbana lakal Hamd’’.¹⁵⁵

**Whilst standing in this position do not fasten your hands but leave them at your sides.**

As part of a longer *hadeeth* it is reported that when Sayyiduna Ali would stand up for prayer and say the *takbeer* he would place his right hand on his left wrist. He would remain like this until he bowed down into *ruk'ah*.¹⁵⁶

Leaving the hands hanging at the side after *ruk'ah* has always been the practice of the entire ummah. The method of fastening the hands at this time as adopted by certain people has never been mentioned by any of the Sahabah in their narrations despite being so particular and diligent in their description of the Prophet’s prayer, and in turn this has never been quoted as being the practice of anyone from amongst the Sahabah, Tabi’in or Tabi’ Tabieen.¹⁵⁷

**Then, repeating the takbeer and without raising your hands begin the prostration.**

Allah says in the Holy Quran:

Oh you who believe! Bow down and prostrate, and worship your Lord.

**Allow your knees to first touch the ground followed by the hands.**

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says, ‘I saw the Prophet place his knees (on the ground) before his hands when he would prostrate, and lift up his hands before his knees when rising.’¹⁵⁹

Khattabī, Tibi, Ibn al Mundhir, and Ibn Sayyid al Naas al Ya’muri have all declared the above *hadeeth* of Sayyiduna Wail bin

---

¹⁵² Bukhari 756 and Muslim 392.
¹⁵³ al Mawdowwanaah at Kobra 1/168.
¹⁵⁴ Bukhari 763 and Muslim 409.
¹⁵⁵ Abu Dawood 849. Sh’abi is a tabee and Ijli has said that the *mursal* narrations of Sh’abi are *saheeh*.
¹⁵⁶ Ibn Abi Shaibah 3940 and Baihaqi 2333.
¹⁵⁷ See Chapter 7 in Part Three for details.
¹⁵⁸ al Hajj 22/77.
¹⁵⁹ Darimi 1320, Ibn Majah 882, Abu Dawood 838, Tirmidhi 268, Nasai 1089, Ibn Khuzaimah 626, and Tahiwi 1/255. Also reported by Ibn al Sakhan in his Saheeh as quoted by Hafidh bin Hajir in al Tahlhees al Habeer 1/254 no. 379. Narrated also by Ibn Hibban 1909, Hakim 822, Baihaqi 2628 and Baghawi 3/133 no 642. Imam Tirmidhi says that the *hadeeth* is *hasan shahih* and Hakim has declared it *saheeh* and Dhahabi agreed. This *hadeeth* has also been narrated with other chains. See Chapter 8 in Part Three for further details.
¹⁶⁰ As mentioned by Hafidh in *Fath al Bari* 2/370, and Baghawi in *Sharh al Sunnah* 3/135.
Hujr as more established and authentic than the hadith of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah (discussed later in Chapter 8, Part Three) on the same subject.

This hadith is supported by the following narrations:

Sayyiduna Anas says, 'I saw the Prophet say the takbeer and place his thumbs close to his ears. He bowed down into ruk'ah until each of his joints became motionless, and then descended (into sujud) with the takbeer. His knees went before his hands.'

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah reports that the Prophet said, 'When one of you falls down into sajdah he should begin with his knees before his hands and he should not descend in the manner of a camel.'

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah reports that the Prophet said, 'When one of you falls down into sajdah does he do so in the manner of a camel?'

Sayyiduna Sa'd bin Abi Waqqas says, 'We used to place our hands before our knees, then we were instructed to place our knees before our hands.'

Kulaib narrates that when the Prophet would prostrate his knees would fall to the ground before his hands.

Sayyiduna Hakeem bin Hizam says, 'I pledged to the Prophet that I would not descend except whilst being upright.'

Sayyiduna Ubayy bin Ka'b narrates that the Prophet would fall down upon his knees and not lean.

Aswad reports that Sayyiduna Umar would fall down on his knees.

The same has been reported about Sayyiduna Umar by Alqamah and Ibrahim al Nakhai.

Ibrahim al Nakhai says, 'It has been remembered of Ibn Mas'ud that his knees would fall to the ground before his hands.'

Abdullah relates that when his father (Muslim bin Yasaar) would prostrate his knees would fall to the ground followed by his hands and then his head.

Nafi' reports that when Ibn Umar would prostrate he would place his knees before his hands and when rising from the prostration he would raise his hands before his knees.

Abu Ishaq relates that when the companions of Abdullah (bin Masood) would descend for sujud their knees would fall to the ground before their hands.

---

161 In al Awsat 3/166.
162 Hakim 822 and Baihaqi 2632. Hakim classified it saheeh and Dhababi agreed with him. Hafidh Ibn al Humam quotes Ibn al Jawzi in Fath al Qadeer 1/287 as saying that all of its narrators are authentic.
163 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2702, Abu Ya'laa 11/414 no 6540, Tahawi 1/255 and Baihaqi 2635.
164 Abu Dawood 841, Nasai 1090 and Baihaqi 2636.
165 Ibn Khuzaimah 828 and Baihaqi 2637. Hafidh Ibn Hajar says in Fath al Bari that two of its narrators are weak.
166 Baihaqi 2630. This hadith is marjai.

167 Ahmad 14888 and Nasai 1084.
168 Ibn Hibban as quoted by Hafidh Haithami in Mawarid al Dhaamaan 497.
169 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2704.
170 Tahawi 1/256. Imam Nimawi says 432 that its isnad is saheeh.
171 Abdul Razzaq 2955.
172 Tahawi 1/256. Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani says 3/35 that its isnad is saheeh.
173 For details of his life and learning see the biographies section at the end of the book.
174 Abdul Razzaq 2958 and Ibn Abi Shaibah 2706.
175 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2705.
Mahdi bin Maimoon says, ‘I saw Ibn Seereen place his knees before his hands.’ 177

Mugheerah says, ‘I asked Ibraheem (al Nakhai) about a man who places his hands before his knees when falling down into sujud. He replied, “Only a fool or madman would do it.”’ 178

Placing one’s knees before the hands when falling into sujud is the known view and practice of Sayyiduna Umar bin al Khattab and Abdullah bin Mas'ud amongst the Sahabah  THE, Ibrahim al Nakhai, Abu Qilabah and Ibn Seereen of the Tabi`in, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Shafiee, Imam Ahmad and their followers, Suyyan al Thawri, Ishaq, the majority of the Fuqaha and all the people of Kufah. It has also been quoted from Ibn Wahb and is the view of Imam Malik as well according to the narration of Ibn Sh'aiban. Imam Tirmidhi says after narrating the above hadeeth of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr  THE, ‘This is the practice of most of the people of learning. They are of the view that a man should place his knees before his hands, and when rising he should lift his hands before his knees.’ 179

(Allow your) nose (to touch the ground) and finally the forehead which should be positioned between the two palms laid flat on the ground towards the qiblah.

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr  THE also says, ‘I observed the Prophet  praying salah, and when he prostrated he placed his hands close to his ears.’ 180

Abu Ishaq says, ‘I asked Baraa bin Azib  THE “Where did the Prophet  place his face when prostrating?” He replied, “Between his palms.”’ 181

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr  THE reports that when the Prophet  would prostrate he would do so between his palms. 182

There are other ahadeeth which suggest that a person should place his hands close to his shoulders in sujud. Muhaddith Yusuf Binnouri explains in his commentary of Tirmidhi that the different narrations of the place of the hands in sujud are similar to those relating to the raising of the hands in the beginning of salah. They can be reconciled in the same manner and collectively taken to mean that in sujud the hands should be placed in such a way that the wrists are close to the shoulders, the fingertips are near the top of the ears and face is in between the palms.

Imam Tahawi also explains that those who raise their hands till their shoulders in the beginning of salah place the hands in the same way in sujud, and those who raise them till their ears in the beginning of salah place them close to their ears in sujud also.

Placing the face between the palms and keeping the fingers close to the ears in sujud is the view and practice of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Ahmad and their followers.

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr  THE reports that when the Prophet  would bow down into rak'u he would spread his fingers wide, and when prostrating he would keep them together. 183

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr  THE narrates that when the Prophet  would prostrate he would keep his fingers (tightly closed) together. 184

177 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2711.
178 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2709.
179 Abdul Razzaq 2956 & 2957, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2707, and Tahawi 1/256. Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmanii says that its narrators are authentic (3/35).
176 For a more detailed discussion of the topic refer to Chapter 8 in Part Three.
180 Abdul Razzaq 2948, Tahawi 1/257 and Baihaqi 2692. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (438).
181 Tirmidhi 271. He adds that the hadeeth is hasan saheeh ghareeb.
182 Ahmad 18365.
183 Ibn Hibban 1917, Tabarani in al Muijam al Kabeer as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/135. Also reported by Baihaqi 2695. Hafidh Haithami says that its isnad is hasan.
Do not rest your forearms on the ground but keep them raised and away from the body. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Malik bin Buhaїnah reports that when the Prophet prayed and then prostrated he would spread out his arms until the whiteness of his armpits became visible.

Ummul Mu'vineen Maimounah says that when the Prophet would prostrate (he would spread his arms so much that) if a small lamb wanted to pass under him it could do so.

Sayyiduna Anas bin Malik relates that the Prophet said, "Complete your prostrations, and let not one of you rest his forearms in the manner of a dog." Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas narrates that the Prophet said, 'I have been instructed to prostrate on seven bones: on the forehead, and he also pointed to his nose; on the hands, on the knees, and on the balls of the two feet. And (I have also been instructed that) we do not gather our clothes and hair.

Sayyiduna Abu Humaid relates that when the Prophet would prostrate he would firmly rest his forehead and nose on the ground, distance his arms from his sides, and place his palms close to his shoulders.

Also ensure that your thighs are not pressed against your abdomen and your toes are facing qiblah.

Sayyiduna Abu Humaid reports as part of a longer hadeeth that when the Prophet prostrated he would distance his thighs (from the upper torso), and would not let his abdomen touch any part of them.

Again as part of a longer hadeeth Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Saidee reports that when prostrating he (the Prophet) would place his hands without spreading them out or bringing them too close (to himself), and point his toes towards the qiblah.

Say tasbeeh for a minimum of three times.

Allah says in the Holy Quran:


Hymn with praise of your Lord, the Most High.

And then pronouncing the takbeer raise your head and sit upright, without sitting on the balls of your feet.

Sayyiduna Samurah narrates that the Prophet forbade iq'a’d in salah.

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah says, 'My beloved friend, the Prophet advised me of three things and forbade three things. He forbade me

---

184 Iba Khuzaymah 642 and Hakim 826. Hakim has declared it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed.
185 During prostration men should allow for some space and distance between their stomachs and thighs, and arms and the side of the body, whilst women should press these limbs together. Men should also raise their arms off the ground and allow for some distance but women should let them cling to the ground. See Chapter 13 in Part Three for further details.
186 Bukhari 383 and Muslim 495.
187 Muslim 496.
188 Bukhari 788 and Muslim 493.
189 Bukhari 779 and Muslim 490.
190 Tirmiti 270. He adds that the hadeeth is hasan saheeh.
191 Abu Dawood 730.
192 Bukhari 794.
193 al A’laa 87/1.
194 To place both the posterior and the hands on the floor and to raise the knees in front in the manner of a dog.
195 Tabarani in al M’ajm al Kabeer 7/229 no 6957, Hakim 1005 and Baihaqi 2739. Hakim declared it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed.
from pecking like a cock, squatting in the manner of a dog, and looking around like a fox.\footnote{Ahmad 8044. Abu Ya'allaa and Tabarani in al Muyjam al Awsat as quoted by Hafidh Haithami. Hafidh Haithami adds that the issad of Ahmad is hasan.}

Sayyiduna Ali \footnote{Ibn Majah 894. Tirmidhi 282 and Baihaqi 5790.} says, "The Prophet \footnote{Bouseeree says in Misbah al Zujajah Chapter 158, hadeeth 329, 'This is a dhaeef issad.' He later adds that the hadith has a supporting narration reported by Tirmidhi on the authority of Sayyiduna Ali \footnote{Muslim 536.}.} said to me, "Oh Ali! I like for you whatever I like for myself and I dislike for you whatever I dislike for myself. Do not sit in an iqa'a position between the two sajdahs."

Anas bin Malik \footnote{Abdul Razzaq 3029. Imam Nimawi says that its issad is saheeh (442).} reports that the Prophet \footnote{Malik 201.} said to him, "When you raise your head from sujud then do not sit in an iqa'a position as a dog sits. Place your posterior between your feet and firmly place the top part of your feet upon the ground.\footnote{Ibn Majah 896.}"

Tawoos reports, "We asked Ibn Abbas \footnote{Malik 201.} about sitting (in the iqa'a position) on the two feet. He replied that it is sunnah. We said, 'We view it as an affliction upon the foot.' He replied, 'Nay. It is the sunnah of your Prophet \footnote{Malik 201.}.'}"

Tawoos's son reports from his father that he saw Abdullah bin Umar, Abdullah bin Zubair, and Abdullah bin Abbas \footnote{Malik 201.} sit in an iqa'a position.

There is no contradiction here in the ahadeeth. As explained by Imam Baihaqi, Ibn al Salah, Imam Nawawi and others, iqa'a is of two kinds: the iqa'a of a dog, which is to place both the posterior and the hands on the floor and to raise the knees in front. It is this kind of iqa'a that has been prohibited in the ahadeeth. The second form of iqa'a is to sit on the balls of the feet keeping the knees on the ground, and to rest the posterior on the heels. It is this second kind of iqa'a that has been ascribed to the three Sahabah \footnote{Malik 201.} in the above hadith. However, even this second form is only to be adopted at the time of need because under the general statement of the ahadeeth the ulama have described it as being makrooh also. The correct sunnah method of sitting between the two sajdahs, as described in the next hadith by Abdullah bin Umar \footnote{Malik 201.} himself, is to sit on the left foot with the right foot erect.

Mughirah bin Hakeem relates that he saw Abdullah bin Umar \footnote{Malik 201.} sit back from the two sajdahs in salah on the balls of his feet. When he ended his prayer, he mentioned this to him, upon which he replied, 'This is not the sunnah of salah. I only do this because I am ill.'\footnote{Malik 201.}

This is the view of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Malik, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal, their followers and also that of Imam Shafiee as quoted by Baihaqi in M\text{arifah al Sunan}.

\textit{And without leaning to any one side.}\footnote{Malik 201.}

Sayyiduna Anas \footnote{Malik 201.} reports that the Prophet \footnote{Malik 201.} forbade iqa'a and tawarruk in salah.\footnote{Malik 201.}

Abdullah bin Dinar reports that he had seen Abdullah bin Umar \footnote{Malik 201.} with a man praying at his side. When the man sat down, he adopted the torabb'u position (put out both legs to one side and sat on the ground) and crossed his feet. When Ibn Umar finished he disapproved of this. The man protested, 'But you do the same.' Abdullah bin Umar \footnote{Malik 201.} said, 'I am ill.'\footnote{Malik 201.}

Abdullah (the son of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar \footnote{Malik 201.}) reports that he used to see his father adopt the torabb'u position when sitting in
salah. He said, ‘So I did the same, and I was young at the time. Abdullah forbade me and said, “The sunnah of the prayer is that you keep your right foot vertical and lay down your left foot.”’ I said to him, “But you do the same.” He said, “My feet do not support me.”’

In the above hadeeth Sayyiduna Ibn Umar says is not quoted as mentioning how a person should sit after spreading the left foot on the ground; by placing the posterior upon the ground or on the left foot? The following hadeeth clarifies this though:

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar says, ‘It is the sunnah of salah to raise the right foot and face it towards the qiblah with its toes, and to sit on the left foot.’

You should sit with both your legs tucked in beneath you, the left foot spread out with the toes in the direction of the right foot which itself should be upright with the toes facing the qiblah. Both hands should be rested upon the thighs with the fingers facing the qiblah. This sitting posture is to be adopted throughout the salah. There is no difference in the manner of sitting for the second and last rak’ah or for the sitting between the two prostrations.

Ummul Mu’mineen A’ishah reports that the Prophet would begin his salah with the takbeer, and his recitation with ‘Alhamdu lillahi Rabbi al Aalameen’, and when he would bow down into ruk’u he would not raise his head nor lower it but keep it in between. Then when he would raise his head from ruk’u he would not prostrate until he had stood upright, and having raised his head from sajdah he would not prostrate again until he had sat upright. He would recite the tahiyah after every two rak’ah, spread his left foot and raise erect his right foot. He would forbid the squatting of the devil, and that a man should spread his arms upon the ground in the manner of animals. He would end his salah with the sajdah.

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr reports, ‘I prayed salah behind the Prophet and said to myself “I will preserve the salah of the Prophet.” When he sat for tashahhud he spread his left foot upon the ground and sat on it, and placed his left palm upon his left thigh and his right arm upon his right thigh. He then shaped his fingers making a circle with the middle finger and the thumb and began praying with the other one (forefinger).’

In another narration Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says, ‘I arrived in Madinah and said to myself, “I will observe the prayer of the Prophet.” When he sat for tashahhud he spread his left foot, placed his left hand on his left thigh, and raised his right foot upright.

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar says, ‘It is the sunnah of salah to raise the right foot and face it towards the qiblah with its toes, and to sit on the left foot.

Adopting this posture in all the sittings of salah is the view and practice of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, their followers, Sufyan al Thawri, Hasan bin Hayy, Ibn al Mubarak and all the people of Kufah. It is a narration of Imam Ahmad and has also been quoted from some Maliki ulama. After narrating the above hadeeth of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr, Imam Tirmidhi says, ‘This is the practice of the majority of the people of learning.

Then repeating the takbeer, fall into the second prostration, and after having recited the tasbeeh as in the first prostration,

204 Malik 202.
205 Nasai 1157 & 1158. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (458).
206 Women should take out both their legs towards the right hand side of the body and rest on the posterior without raising their right foot. See Chapter 13 in Part Three for details.
say the takbeer again and return to the standing position. Whilst standing up, ensure that you first lift your forehead and nose, followed by your hands and finally your knees. Do not support yourself on your hands.

Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ reports that the Prophet ﷺ forbade that a man should support himself on his hands when rising in salah.211

Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ also reports that the Prophet ﷺ forbade that a man should support himself on his hands in salah.212

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ says, ‘I saw the Prophet ﷺ place his knees (on the ground) before his hands when he would prostrate, and lift up his hands before his knees when rising.’213

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ narrates (as part of a longer hadeeth), ‘And when he (the Prophet ﷺ) would rise he would do so on his knees, and he would place his hands (for support) upon his thighs.’214

Sayyiduna Ali ﷺ says, ‘It is part of the sunnah of fardh salah that when a man rises in the first two rakah’s he should not place his hands upon the earth for support unless he is an old man who cannot stand up without doing so.’215

Ibrahim al Nakhai would disapprove of someone leaning on his hands when sitting in between the two rakah’s or when rising.216

Standing up to another rak’ah without supporting oneself on the hands but placing them on the knees is the view and practice of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal, Imam Malik as mentioned by Ibn Abd al Barr al Malik in his al Tarmheed, Awzaee, Sufyan al Thawri, and Ishaq bin Rahuyah, and their followers. It has also been quoted from the noble companions Sayyiduna Umar, Sayyiduna Ali, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar and Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Abbas ﷺ.

And do not adopt a sitting posture in between.

In the longer hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ about the man who did not complete his salah (who has been identified as Sayyiduna Khalid bin Rafe’i ﷺ, the brother of Sayyiduna Rifa’ah bin Rafe’i ﷺ, the other narrator of this hadeeth apart from Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ) the Prophet ﷺ says to Sayyiduna Khalid, ‘Then fall down into prostration until you are motionless, then rise and sit until you are motionless, then fall down prostrate again until you are motionless, then rise and stand straight. Do this throughout your salah.’217

The Prophet ﷺ does not mention any sitting after the second prostration but instructs him to stand up straight.

Abbas or Ayyash bin Sahl al Saidee reports that he was in a gathering where his father, who was a companion of the Prophet ﷺ, was present. In the gathering there was also Abu Hurairah, Abu Humaid al Saidee, and Abu Usaid. He relates a long hadeeth in which he mentions that ‘He (the Prophet ﷺ) said the takbeer and prostrated. He then said the takbeer again and stood up but did not sit.’218

211 Abu Dawood 992 and Baihaqi 2808. Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani says that its narrators are those of Bukhari except Muhammad bin Abdul Malik who is thiqah (810).
212 Ibn Khuzaimah 692, Hakim 837 and Baihaqi 2807. Hakim declared it saheeh and Dhaihabi agreed with him.
213 Darimi 1320, Ibn Majah 882, Abu Dawood 838, Tirmidhi 268, Nasai 1089, Ibn Khuzaimah 626, and Tahawi 1/255. Also reported by Ibn al Sakan in his Seeh as quoted by Hafid bin Hajar in al Talkhees al Habeer 1/254 no. 379. Narrated also by Ibn Hibban 1909, Hakim 822, Baihaqi 2628 and Baghawi 3/133 no 642. Imam Tirmidhi says that the hadeeth is hasan gharib and Hakim has declared it saheeh and Dhaihabi agreed. This hadeeth has also been narrated with other chains. See Chapter 8 in Part Three for further details.
214 Abu Dawood 839. The hadeeth is munqati’ but all the narrators up to Abdul Jabbar are authentic as explained by Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani 811.
215 Ibn Abi Shahtah 3998.
216 Abdul Razzaq 2961.
217 Bukhari 6290 & 760.
218 Abu Dawood 733 & 966. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (449). Also reported by Tahawi 4/354, Ibn Hibban 1863 and Baihaqi 2642.
Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ says, ‘The Prophet ﷺ would stand up on the balls of his feet in salah.’

Nu‘maan bin Abu Ayyash says, ‘I have seen more than one of the companions of the Prophet ﷺ. When they raised their heads from the prostration in the first and third rak‘ah they would stand up straight as they were and they would not sit.’

Abdul Rahman bin Yazeed says, ‘I observed Abdullah bin Mas‘ud in salah, and saw him rise and not sit.’ He adds, ‘He would stand up on the balls of his feet in the first and third rak‘ah.’

Wahb bin Kaysan says, ‘I saw Abdullah bin al Zubair ﷺ standing up on the balls of his feet when he had completed the second prostration.’

Khaithamah and Nafi’ both report that Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ would stand up on the balls of his feet in salah.

Abu Atiyyah reports that Ibn Abbas and Ibn Umar ﷺ would do the same.

Sh‘abii says, ‘Umar, Ali and the companions of the Prophet ﷺ would stand up on the balls of their feet in salah.’

Ubaid bin Abi al J‘ad reports the same about Sayyiduna Ali ﷺ.

Zuhri says, ‘Our Shaikhs would not do mawlayah (reel), meaning when one of them would rise from the second sajadah in the first rak‘ah he would stand up as he was and not sit.’

Rising straight to the second and fourth rak‘ah without sitting down is the view and practice of Imam Malik, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Ahmad, Ishaq bin Rahuyah, Awzaee, their followers and the majority of the scholars. Imam Ahmad also said, ‘Most ahadeeth are upon this’ (not sitting), and Athram says, ‘I saw Ahmad rise upon the balls of his feet after the sujud. He did not sit before rising.’ The same has been reported from many of the Sahabah ﷺ. After quoting the above hadith of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ, Imam Tirmidhi says, ‘This is the practice of the people of learning. They prefer that a man stands up on the balls of his feet in salah.’

With this you will have completed your first rak‘ah. All the remaining rak‘aat of salah are to be performed in a similar manner, with the same recitations, movements and postures. However, in the remaining rak‘aat you should not recite thanaa, and istiadaah, nor should you raise your hands with any takbeer as you did in the beginning of the salah.

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ relates that when the Prophet ﷺ would rise for the second rak‘ah he would begin the recitation with ‘Alhamdulillahi Rabbil Alameen’ and would not remain silent.

You should, however, recite basmalah before Surah al Fatihaah at the beginning of each rak‘ah. When you have completed your second prostration of the second rak‘ah, do not stand up but adopt the sitting posture as before and recite the tashahhud.

---

219 Tirmidhi 288 and Baghawi 669.
220 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3989. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is hasan (451).
221 Abdul Razzaq 2966 & 2967, Ibn Abi Shaibah 3979 & 3986, Tabarani in al M‘ujam al Kabeer 9/266 no. 9327, and Baihaqi 2764. Hafish Haithami says 2/136 that its narrators are those of Bukhari, and Baihaqi has also declared it saheeh.
222 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3983 & 3984. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (453).
223 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3980 & 3985.
224 Abdul Razzaq 2968.
225 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3982.
226 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3978.
227 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3987.
228 Muslim 599.
Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud relates, ‘When we prayed behind the Prophet we would say, “Peace (al Salam) be upon Allah.” The Prophet turned to us and said, “Indeed Allah is the one who is al Salam so you should say.”\(^{229}\)

Imam Tirmidhi says, ‘The hadeeth of Ibn Mas'ud has been narrated from him in more than one way. It is the most authentic hadeeth from the Prophet regarding tashahhud, and it is the basis of the practice of most of the Prophet’s companions and the Tabi'un after them.’\(^{230}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud also reports that it is sunnah to read the tashahhud silently.\(^{230}\)

When you reach the words ‘La ilaha’ (there is no God) raise your index finger and tuck the middle, third and last finger into the palm, with the thumb and middle finger touching and forming a circle.

Sayyiduna Wail bin Fujr says, ‘I saw the Prophet make a circle with his thumb and middle finger, and lift the one next to it (the forefinger) praying with it in tashahhud.’\(^{231}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin al Zubair narrates that when the Prophet sat praying (tashahhud) he would place his right hand upon his right thigh and his left hand upon his left thigh. He would point with his forefinger and place his thumb upon his middle finger, whilst his left hand would be grasping his knee.\(^{232}\) And in the narration of Nasai, Abu Dawood and Ahmad, ‘His gaze would not pass beyond his pointing.’\(^{233}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar relates that when the Prophet would sit in salah, he would place his right hand upon his knee and raise his forefinger praying with it, whilst his left hand would be spread out upon his left knee.\(^{234}\)

Sayyiduna Numair al Khuzai relates that he saw the Prophet seated in salah. He had placed his right arm upon his right thigh and raised his forefinger, having bent it slightly whilst praying.\(^{235}\)

The index finger should only be raised once during the tashahhud at the time mentioned. It should not be raised at any other point nor should it be constantly moved.

Sayyiduna Abdullah ibn al Zabair narrates that the Prophet would point with his finger when he prayed and he would not move it.\(^{236}\)

If this is a three or four rak'ah prayer, then you should recite no more than the above tashahhud and stand up for the third rak'ah.

Towards the end of a longer hadeeth about tashahhud Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud reports that, ‘If the Prophet was in the middle of his salah he would stand up after having completed his tashahhud, and if he was at the end of his salah he would pray after

\(^{229}\) Bukhari 6946, Muslim 402.


\(^{231}\) Ibn Majah 912 and Nasai 1264. Boucicaut (Chapter 163, no. 336) and Imam Nimawi (464) have both declared the hadeeth saheeh.

\(^{232}\) Muslim 579 and Abu Dawood 988.

\(^{233}\) Ahmad 15668, Abu Dawood 990 and Nasai 1275.

\(^{234}\) Muslim 580, Tirmidhi 294 and Nasai 1269.

\(^{235}\) Ahmad 15439, Abu Dawood 991, Nasai 1274 and Ibn Hibban 1943.

\(^{236}\) Abu Dawood 989, Nasai 1270, Abu Anwah 2/226 (Dar al Ma'rifah edition, Beirut.), Baihaqi 2786 and Baghari 676. Imam Nawawi has declared it saheeh in his al Majmu'a 3/454.
his *tashahhud* whatever Allah wished him to pray and then say the *salam*.

Ummul Mu'mineen Aisha reports that the Prophet would not pray more than the *tashahhud* after two *rak'at*.

Sh'abi says, 'He who recites more than the *tashahhud* after two *rak'at* should perform two *sajdahs* of *sahw*.

Hasan al Basri would say that one should not recite more than the *tashahhud* after two *rak'at*.

Not exceeding the *tashahhud* in *fardh* and *wajib salah* is the view of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Malik, Imam Ahmad, their followers, Ishaq, Sh'abi, Ibrahim al Nakhai, and Sufyan al Thawri.

Imam Tahawi says, 'Whoever recites more than this, he has contravened the *ijmaa* (consensus).

Again whilst rising you should not support yourself on your hands but stand up directly. In the final two *rak'at* of a *fardh salah*, you should only recite *Surah al Fatihah*.

Sayyiduna Abu Qatadah narrates that the Prophet would recite *Surah al Fatihah* and another *surah* in the first two *rak'at* of *Dhuhr* and *Asr salah*, and at times he would (read loud enough) and allow us to hear a verse. In the second two *rak'at* he would read only *Surah al Fatihah*.

---

237 Ahmad 4369 and Ibn Khuzaimah 708. Hafidh Haithami says 2/142 that its narrators are authentic.

238 Abu Ya'laa 7/337 no. 4373. Hafidh Haithami says 2/142, 'It seems that Ibn al Huwayrith (one of the narrators) is Khalid bin al Huwayrith who is authentic and the rest of the narrators are those of Bukhari.

239 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3022.

240 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3021.

241 Bukhari 725 and Muslim 451.

---

After completing the second prostration of the final rak'ah you should again adopt the sitting posture and recite the *tashahhud* as before, followed by prayer and salutations upon the Prophet as follows.

Abdul Rahman bin Abu Layla says, 'K'ab bin Ujrah met me and said, 'Should I not give you a gift that I have heard from the Messenger?' I replied, 'Of course. Give me this gift.' He said, 'We questioned the Prophet saying, 'O Apostle of Allah! How should the *Salah* (prayer) be made upon you, the people of the Prophet's household? Indeed Allah has already shown us how we are to send salutations upon you.' He replied, 'Say:

Al-fathum صلى الله عليه وسلم said: "وَعَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَعَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَعَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ بَارْزَدَ عَلَى آَاَالِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِلَّمَ حَرَامَةٌ B

You should then recite one or more prayers ensuring that they are known authentic prayers from the Quran and hadith.

Sayyiduna Muawiya bin al Hakam al Sulami relates as part of a longer hadith that the Prophet said, 'No speech of men is correct in this salah. It should only be *tasbeeh*, *takbeer* and the recitation of the Quran.'

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud says, 'A man should recite *tashahhud*, then send prayers and salutations upon the Prophet, and then pray for himself.'

Not making *dua* in salah except with the words of the Quran and the *ahadeeth* or those that resemble them is the view of Imam Abu

---

242 Bukhari 3190 and Muslim 406.

243 Ahmad 23250, Darimi 1502, Muslim 537, Abu Dawood 930 and Nasai 1218.

244 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3026, Hakim 990. Dhahabi says of Hakim's *sunad*, 'according to the conditions of Bukhari and Muslim.' Also reported by Baihaqi 2879.
Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, their followers, Tawoos and Ibrahim al Nakhai.

After completing your prayers you should say ‘Assalamu alaikum wa rahmatullah’ once turning your head to the right and then a second time turning your head to the left. These final words end your salah.

Amir bin Sa’d relates from his father who said, ‘I used to see the Prophet ﷺ do the salam to his right and left until I could see the whiteness of his cheek.’

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud ﷺ says, ‘The Prophet ﷺ would say the takbeer at the time of each descent, rising, standing and sitting, and he would do salam to his right and left (saying) ‘Assalamu Alaikum wa Rahmatullah, Assalamu Alaikum wa Rahmatullah’ (turning so much that) the whiteness of his cheek could be seen. I saw Abu Bakr and Umar ﷺ do this also.’

---

245 Muslim 582.
246 Nasai 1319. Also narrated by the following without mentioning Sayyiduna Abu Bakr and Sayyiduna Umar ﷺ: Ahmad 3691, Ibn Majah 914, Abu Dawood 996 and Tirmidhi 295. Imam Tirmidhi also adds that the hadeeth is hasan saheeh.
Chapter 1

Ahadeeth of the general description of salah.

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ narrates that when the Prophet ﷺ would stand up for salah he would say the takbeer when standing, then whilst bowing for ruk’u. He would then read ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’ (Allah has heard the one who praised him) when rising from ruk’u. Whilst standing he would say ‘Rabbana lakaal Hamd’ (Oh Allah! All praise belongs to you.) He would then say the takbeer when falling into prostration and again when rising. He would do this throughout the salah until he completed it. He would also say the takbeer when standing up from the sitting of the second rak’ah.247

Saeed bin al Harith reports that Abu Hurairah ﷺ was sick or absent so Abu Saeed al Khudri ﷺ led us in salah. He pronounced the takbeer loudly when he began his salah, when he bowed into ruk’u, when he said, ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’, when he raised his head from sajdah, when he prostrated, and when he stood up from the two rak’aat until he completed his salah in this manner. When he had finished it was said to him, ‘The people have prayed differently to you.’ He left and stood by the mimbar and said, ‘Oh people! By Allah, I do not care whether your salah differs (from mine) or not. This is how I have seen the Prophet ﷺ pray.’248

Salim al Barrad says, ‘We visited Abu Mas’ud Uqbah bin Amr ﷺ and asked him to show us the prayer of the Prophet ﷺ. He stood before us in the masjid and said the takbeer. When he performed the ruk’u, he placed his palms on his knees with his fingers slightly lower, and distanced his arms from his body until he was motionless. He then said, ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’ and stood still. Again he said the takbeer and fell into sajdah. He placed his hands on the floor, distanced his arms from his body until he was motionless, and then

247 Bukhari 756 and Malik 168.
248 Ahmad 10756 and Bukhari 791.
raised his head and sat, still. He performed another sajdah in a similar manner, and then completed his prayer performing all four rak'at in this way. He then said, "This is how we saw the Prophet pray."  

Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah reports that a man once entered the masjid and performed his salah whilst the Prophet was in the corner of the masjid. He then greeted the Prophet. The Prophet returned the greeting and said, 'Return and pray because you have not prayed.' The man went back, prayed and then greeted the Prophet again. The Prophet returned the greeting for a second time and said, 'Return and pray because you have not prayed.' On the third time the man said, 'Teach me.' The Prophet said, 'When you stand for prayer, complete the wudhu, face the qiblah, pronounce the takbeer, and recite whatever Quran you may know. Then bow down until you are motionless in ruk'at. Now stand erect and then fall down and settle into prostration. Then rise from your prostration and sit motionless. Then fall down again and settle into prostration. Then rise until you stand up straight. Do this throughout your salah.'  

Muhammad bin Amr bin Ataa' reports that he was seated with a group of the Prophet's companions. He says, 'We discussed the Prophet's prayer. Abu Humaid al Saidee said, 'I am the one amongst you who best remembers the Prophet's prayer. I saw him raise his hands close to his shoulders when he said the takbeer al tahreemah. When he bowed down into ruk'at he would firmly grasp his knees and bend his back. When raising his head again he would stand straight until each joint would return to its original place. When prostrating he would place his hands without spreading them out or bringing them too close (to himself), and point his toes towards the qiblah. When sitting after the two rak'at he would sit on his left foot and raise erect his right foot, and when sitting in the last rak'ah he would extend his left foot, raise the right foot and sit on his posterior.'  

Ummul Mu'mineen A'ishah reports that the Prophet would begin his salah with the takbeer, and his recitation with 'Alhamdu lillahi Rabbi Alaalimeen', and when he would bow down into ruk'at he would not raise his head nor lower it but keep it in between. Then when he would raise his head from ruk'at he would not prostrate until he had stood upright, and having raised his head from sajdah he would not prostrate again until he had stood upright. He would recite the tahiyah after every two rak'at, spread his left foot and raise erect his right foot. He would forbid the squatting of the devil, and that a man should spread his arms upon the ground in the manner of animals. He would end his salah with the salam.  

Abdul Rahman bin Ghanim reports that Abu Malik al Asha'ri summoned his family saying, 'Oh Asha'ri's! Assemble and bring together your womenfolk and your children. I shall teach you the prayer of the Messenger who led us in salah in Madinah.' They came together and brought with them their womenfolk and their children. He did the ablution and showed them how the Prophet would wash. He performed his wudhu thoroughly, and when the shadow grew long and the shadow (of high noon) broke he stood up and gave the adhan. The men formed a row at the front, the children behind them and the women behind the children. He then read the iqamah, stepped forward, raised his hands, and said the takbeer. He silently read the opening chapter of the book and a surah, pronounced the takbeer, bowed down into ruk'at and said 'Subhanallah wa bihamdih' three times. He then said, 'Sami Allahu li man Hamidah' and stood upright. He said the takbeer and fell down into prostration, said the takbeer and raised his head, said the takbeer and fell down into sujud, then said the takbeer again and stood upright. Thus his takbeers in the first rak'ah were six. He also said the takbeer when he stood up for the second rak'ah when he completed his salah he

---

249 Ahmad 16628, Darimi 1304, Abu Dawood 863 and Nasai 1036. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (414).
250 Bukhari 6290 and 760.
251 Bukhari 794.
252 Muslin 498.
Chapter 2

The distance of the feet in salah.

Many hadiths have been narrated about the straightening of the rows and they include a number of different expressions to emphasise this point, such as the following narrations:

1. Sayyiduna Anas narrates that the Prophet said, "Pull your rows together, keep them close and keep your necks in line, for by He in Whose hands rests the soul of Muhammad, indeed I see the shayateen entering the gaps in the row as though they are small sheep."

2. Sayyiduna Nu'man bin Bashir says, "The Prophet turned his face to the people and said thrice, 'Straighten your rows.' (He then said), 'By Allah, you will straighten your rows or Allah will make your hearts differ.' (Sayyiduna Nu'man bin Bashir continues), 'I saw each man join his shoulder with the shoulder of the person next to him, his knee with his knee, and his ankle with his ankle."

3. Sayyiduna Anas bin Malik reports that the Prophet said, 'Straighten your rows, for indeed I see you from behind my back.' Sayyiduna Anas says, 'We would join our shoulders and feet with the shoulders and feet of the person next to us.'

---

253 Ahmad 22399, Imam Nimawi says that its isnaad is hasan (450).
254 Ahmad 13324, Abu Dawood 667 and Nasai 815.
256 Bukhari 692.
Certain people, however, take some aspects of the above ahadeeth literally and insist on joining their ankles and feet with the person next to them throughout salah. Their understanding of the ahadeeth is at odds with that of the scholars of hadith and fiqh.

Imam Bukhari has narrated the above hadith of Sayyiduna Anas in a chapter which he has titled 'Chapter on joining the shoulders and feet in the row.' Hafidh Ibn Hajar says in his commentary of Bukhari, Fath al Bari, 'The meaning of this is to emphasise the straightening of the row and the filling of the gaps in between.'

The muhaddithun and fiqaha have never taken these individual expressions literally but, as explained above by Hafidh Ibn Hajar, only as a general indication of the measures to be adopted in order to straighten and complete the rows before salah. They explain the actions of the Sahabah as being before salah. It is extremely difficult if not impossible to maintain this posture in ruku, sajdah, and tasahhud, and there is no evidence to suggest that, if practiced, it should be restricted only to the qiyam. In fact, even in qiyam it is extremely awkward and difficult to keep one's knee joined to that of the next person. It is precisely for the above reasons that the mujtahid Imams, the muhaddithun and the fiqaha of the ummah have never mentioned the joining of the knees and ankles as part of the posture or procedure of salah. They regard them as only a pre-salah measure to ensure the completion and straightening of the rows. So once the gaps have been filled, the row is straight and -where necessary- complete, one should adopt a natural posture and keep both feet apart at a comfortable distance.

Chapter 3

The position of the hands in salah

Imam Tirmidhi says in his Sunan:

'Fastening the hands in prayer is the practice of the learned Sahabah, Tabi'een and Tab'i Tabi'een. They are of the view that the individual performing the prayer should place his right hand on his left. Some of them then believe that he should position them above the navel whilst others contend that they should be placed below the navel. All is permissible in their view.'

As described by Imam Tirmidhi, the exact position of the hands in salah is a point of difference among the scholars. The collection of ahadeeth on this topic contain references to both positions, and both methods have remained in practice from the time of the Sahabah till today. It is noteworthy that Imam Tirmidhi makes no mention of placing the hands on the chest as being the view or practice of anyone.

Ahadeeth on placing the hands below the navel.

1. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says: 'I saw the Prophet placing his right hand over his left in prayer, below the navel.'

Although this hadith with the additional wording of 'below the navel' is not to be found in the presently published version of Abu Bakr bin Abi Shaibah's al Musannaf, it is to be found in a number of

257 Fath al Bari, 2/268.

258 Tirmidhi 252.

259 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3938. Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubahgah says in his takhrej of the ahadeeth of al Ikhtiyar that this hadith has a very good sanad. Allamah Hashim Sindhi also says in his Dirham al Sunnah p84 that its sanad is strong. Imam Nimawi says that its sanad is saheeh (330). Shaikh Abu al Tayyib also says in his commentary of Tirmidhi 1/277 (published by al Mabah al Nidhami, Kanpur, India. 1299 AH) that this is a hadith which is saheeh in both sanad and text and is thus a basis for evidence.' Qadhi Abid Sindhi also says in Tawall al Anwaar that its narrators are authentic.
different manuscripts of the work. Hafidh Qasim bin Qutlubughah has quoted this hadeeth with the above words from Ibn Abi Shaibah's *al Musannaf* in his takhreej of the ahadeeth of al Ikhtiqaar adding that it has a very good sanad. Allamah Hashim Sindi also claims in his *Dirham al Surrah* that he has seen this hadeeth with the words ‘below the navel’ in two separate manuscripts of Abu Bakr bin Abi Shaibah’s *al Musannaf*: the manuscript of Shaikh Muhammad Akram al Nasrpu who he studied in Sindh, and the manuscript of Shaikh Abdul Qadir the Mufti of Makkah in his time which he studied in Makkah al Mukarramah. Imam Nimawi writes that Allamah Qaim Sindi also claims in his book *Fawz al Kiram* that he himself has seen the additional words in an authentic copy of *al Musannaf*. These are thus a number of different copies of *al Musannaf* all of which contain the wording of ‘below the navel.’

2. Sayyiduna Ali ﷺ says, ‘It is part of the Sunnah of prayer to place the palm over the palm below the navel.’

3. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ says, ‘The positioning of the hands upon the hands in prayer is below the navel.’

Although these are the words of Sayyiduna Ali and Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ they are equivalent to the direct command of the Prophet ﷺ himself because, according to the view adopted by the majority of scholars, statements of the Sahabah such as ‘we were commanded to do this’, ‘we were forbidden to do this’ or ‘it is sunnah to do so’ are all to be placed in the category of a *nafa’su* hadeeth. It is inconceivable that the Sahabah would make such categorical statements without having seen or heard something to the same effect from the Prophet ﷺ. In the light of this principle, the Hanbali scholar Ibn Qudamah concludes in his famous work *al Mughni*: ‘This practice goes back to the sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ.’

Some authors, quoting Imam Nawawi, have questioned the reliability of Abdur Rahmaan bin Ishaq, one of the narrators of the above two hadeeth. Imam Nawawi’s assertion is that Abdur Rahmaan bin Ishaq is unanimously considered weak by the scholars of *Jarh* and *Tadeel* (endorsement and disparagement of narrators). However, not all scholars agree and thus, commenting on this sweeping claim of Imam Nawawi, the author of *Bughyah al Almae* says,

“This is *tahawwur* (hastiness in decision) on the part of Nawawi as is often the case with him in such instances. Otherwise, Hafidh Ibn Hajar says in *al Qaww al Musaddad*:

‘Tirmidhi has declared his (Abdul Rahman bin Ishaq’s) hadeeth to be *hasan*’ (despite saying that the scholars had questioned his authenticity on account of his memory), and Hakim has classified a hadeeth transmitted through him to be *sahih*. Ibn Khuzaimah has also narrated a hadeeth through him in his *Sahih* although he has added that there is something in one’s heart regarding Abdul Rahman.”

Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani says in his *I'ilaa al Sunan*,

‘No one has ever accused Abdul Rahman of lying, therefore he falls into the same category as Ibn Abi Layla, Ibn Lahib ah and others. It is recorded in *Tahdeeb al Tahdeeb* that Bazzar said, “His Hadeeth is not equivalent to the Hadeeth of a Hafidh.” Ijl says, ‘He is weak but acceptable in Hadeeth; his Hadeeth can be recorded.” These

---

260 Dirham al Surrah, p84.
261 Aathaur al Sunan, p148.
262 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3954, Ahmad 877, Abu Dawood 756, Daruqutni 1089 & 1090, Baihaqi 2341 & 2342. Reported also by Abu Hafs bin Shaheen in his *al Sunnah* and by Adani in his *Musnad* as mentioned by Allamah Hashim Sindi in *Dirham al Surrah*, p32 quoting from *Kanz ul Ummal*. Also narrated by al Razeen as quoted by the author of *Irj al Fawaid*.
263 Abu Dawood 758. Also reported by Ibn Battah as quoted by Allamah Hashim Sindi in *Dirham al Surrah*, p36.
264 Tadreeeb al Rawi 1/188.
265 al Mughni, 2/23.
266 al Qaww al Musaddad p35.
267 Tirmidhi has in fact declared at least four hadeeth to be *hasan* all of which contain Abdul Rahman bin Ishaq al Kufi. Hadeeth numbers: 741, 2052, 3462, and 3563.
268 Bughyah al Almae fi Tahhreej al Zailae 1/314.
endorsements show that the hadith may be elevated to the rank of hasan. 269

Shaikh ul Hadeeth Moulana Muhammad Zakariyya confirms that they are hasan in his Awjaz al Masalik saying that the author of Jayn al Fawaid has quoted the hadith, ascribing it to Razeen, and not commented on its rank. He mentions that any hadith which he quotes in his book and then does not comment on its rank, will either be saheeh or hasan. 270

It should also be remembered that even though Imam Nawawi’s assertion that ‘Abdul Rahman is unanimously considered to be dhaaef is incorrect (as clearly explained above) the Hanafi scholars do not rely entirely upon this hadith but argue that it is supported by the other narrations of the same meaning which lend it strength and authenticity.

4. Hajaj bin Hasan said: ‘I heard Abu Mijlaz say, or I asked him “How should I place my hands?” whereupon he replied, “He (the individual performing the prayer) should place the inside of his right palm on his left hand and position both of them below the navel.” 271

Abu Mijlaz was a famous Tabiee who passed away in Kufah in 109 AH. His own practice, as quoted by Baihaqi and Abu Dawood, was also to fasten his hands below the navel.

5. Ibrahim al Nakhai reports that the Prophet would rest one of his hands on the other in salah, humbling himself before Allah. Imam Muhammad

6. Ibrahim al Nakhai says: ‘He (the individual performing the prayer) should place his right hand on his left, below the navel.’ 273

The view of the four schools of fiqh

Hanafi
The author of al Durr al Muktaar, explaining the Hanafi position says: ‘For men the hands should be below the navel.’

Maliki
Imam Maliki has three narrations: 1) Not fastening the hands at all but letting them hang at the sides. This is the most famous ruling of his madhhab. 2) A choice of fastening or letting them hang at the sides. 3) Placing the hands above the navel but below the chest.

Shafiee
Imam Shafiee says that they should be placed above the navel but below the chest. 274 Imam Nawawi discusses this in his commentary of Muslim saying, ‘This is the better known ruling of our madhhab’. He also says in Shahr al Muhaddithab, ‘He should place them below his chest and above his navel. This is the correct and clear ruling (of our school).’

Imam Shafiee also has two other narrations but they are not well known: below the navel and on the chest.

269 T’laa al Sunan 2/193.
270 Awjaz al Masalik 3/172.
271 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3942. Ibn al Turkmanni says 2/47 that it has been narrated with a very good sanad. Imam Nimawi (331) and Muhaddith Yusuf al Binnour 2/44 both say that its isnad is saheeh. It has also been mentioned by Abu Dawood but without a sanad (757).
272 Imam Muhammad in his Kitab al Aathaar 120.
273 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3939 and Imam Muhammad in his Kitab al Aathaar 121. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is hasan (332).
274 Muhaddith Yusuf al Binnour writes in his Arabic commentary of Timaidhi, M’aarif al Sunan: ‘In our knowledge there is no hadith, neither marj’i or manwuyf that supports or suggests this detailed difference of above the navel but below the chest.’
Hanbali

Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal's view is that the hands should be fastened below the navel. This is his most famous narration and is adopted by virtually all the Hanbali ulama.

Ibn al Qayyim writes in his Badai' al Fawaid that Abu Talib said,

"I asked Ahmad bin Hanbal, 'Where should a man place his hands when praying?' He replied, 'Upon the navel or below it.'"\textsuperscript{275}

The Hanbali scholar of 18th century Arabia, Sheikh Muhammad bin Abdul Wahhab also says,

"He should then clasp his left wristbone with his right hand and place them beneath the navel. This signifies humbleness before his lord, the Almighty."\textsuperscript{276}

Shaikh ul Hadeeth Moulana Muhammad Zakariyya quotes the authors of Null al Maorib, al Anwaar and al Rawdh al Murabb'a in his Awyaj al Masalik and then concludes,

"We learn from this that the preferred and secure narration amongst the Hanbali ulama is that of below the navel."\textsuperscript{277}

The Hanbali scholar Alaa al Deen al Mardawi writes in his al Insaeaf,

"He should place his hands below his navel. This is the madihab (of the Hanbalis), and upon this are the clear majority of the Hanbali ulama."\textsuperscript{278}

Imam Ahmad also has two other narrations: 1) Above the navel but below the chest. 2) A choice of any one the two positions without any special preference for either.

Conclusion

The opinions of all Imams and ulama can therefore be summarised into three main positions:

- Above the navel but below the chest
- Below the navel
- Not fastening the hands at all, but letting them hang at the sides

Thus, in reality, there are only two positions of fastening the hands: above the navel and below it. No school of fiqh advocates the fastening of the hands on the chest.

To this end Ibn al Qayyim al Jawziyyah also writes in his Badai' al Fawaid, "It is makhrooh (undesirable) to place the hands on the chest in view of the narration that the Prophet forbade takfeer, which is to place the hands on the chest.\textsuperscript{279}

Abu al Tayyib al Madani writes in his commentary on Tirmidhi that none of the four Imams adopted the practice of placing the hands on the chest.

Ahadeeth of placing hands upon the chest.

Following is an analysis of the ahadeeth often quoted for placing the hands upon the chest.

1. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says, 'I prayed with the Prophet and he placed his right hand over his left on his chest.'\textsuperscript{280}

Imam Nimawi says, 'It's isnad is questionable and the additional wording 'on his chest' is inauthentic and not established.'

\textsuperscript{275} Badai' al Fawaid 3/73.
\textsuperscript{276} Kitaab Adaab al Mushy ila al Sahah, second section on fiqh, p6.
\textsuperscript{277} Awyaj al Masalik 3/171.
\textsuperscript{278} al Insaeaf 1/46.
\textsuperscript{279} Badai' al Fawaid 3/73.
\textsuperscript{280} Ibn Khuzaimah 479.
This hadith has been reported by Muammar bin Ismael from Sufyan al Thawri from Aasim bin Kulaib from Wail bin Huir. However, it is only Muammar who reports these additional words from Sufyan al Thawri. Sufyan’s other student, Abdullah bin al Waleed who also narrates this hadith from him does not include these words in his narration as recorded in Imam Ahmad’s Musnad.281

The other narrators who report the hadith together with Sufyan al Thawri from Aasim bin Kulaib have also not included these words in their narrations. Observe the following list of narrators who have all reported the same hadith from Aasim bin Kulaib but none of them have included the additional words reported by Muammar bin Ismael.

- Shubbah, Abdul Wahid, and Zubair bin Muawiyah as in Imam Ahmad’s Musnad.282
- Zaidah as in Imam Ahmad’s Musnad, Darimi, Abu Dawood, Nasai and Baihaqi. 283
- Bishr bin al Mufaddhal as in Ibn Majah, Abu Dawood and Nasai.284
- Abdullah bin Idrees as in Ibn Majah. 285
- Salam bin Saleem as in Abu Dawood Tayalisi’s Musnad.286

There are many other chains for this hadith, however, none contain this extra wording. Thus, it is clear that this is Muammar bin Ismael’s own erroneous addition to the hadith. Ibn al Qayyim al Jawziyyah also says in Ilaam al Muwaqqteen, ‘No one has said (upon the chest) apart from Muammar bin Ismael.’287 Therefore, as Imam Nimawi has concluded in his al Ta’leeq al Hasan, this hadith with the additional wording of ‘upon his chest’ is extremely weak.

It is an accepted principle of hadith that if a certain authentic and reliable narrator contradicts other equally authentic or more reliable narrators in his wording of a hadith then his narration will be declared shaadh and will not be accepted. If this is the case with authentic narrators, then an irregular addition of the words ‘upon the chest’ cannot be accepted from a narrator who, although declared acceptable by some, errs excessively and is weak of memory like Muammar bin Ismael. Study the following observations of the scholars of Jarh and T’adeel about Muammar bin Ismael:

Abu Hatim says, ‘He is sadoog, firm in sunnah, but one of many mistakes’.

Imam Bukhari says, ‘Muammar is munkar al hadith’. (People who view Imam Bukhari as the ultimate authority in matters of Hadeeth should note his following statement: ‘It is not permissible to narrate from anyone whom I have labelled munkar al hadith’.)288

Dhahabi says in al Kashif,

‘He is sadoog, firm in sunnah, but one of many mistakes. It was also said that he buried his books and narrated by heart and thus erred.’

Ibn Sa’d says, ‘He is thiqah, though one of many mistakes.’

Yakub bin Sufyan says,

‘Muammar Abu Abdul Rahman is a great sunnishaikh. I heard Sulaiman bin Harb praise him. Our shaikhs would advise us to take

281 Ahmad 18392.
282 Ahmad 18398, 18371 & 18397.
283 Ahmad 18391, Darimi 1357, Abu Dawood 726, Nasai 889 and Baihaqi 2325.
284 Ibn Majah 810, Abu Dawood 726 & 957, and Nasai 1265.
285 Ibn Majah 810.
286 Abu Dawood Tayalisi 1020.
287 Ilaam al Muwaqqteen 2361.
288 Mizan al I’ilal, 1/119.
his hadeeth, only that his hadeeth are not like the hadeeth of his companions. At times it is obligatory upon the people of knowledge to distance themselves from his narrations as he narrates munkar ahadeeth from even his authentic teachers. This is worse for had he narrated these munkar ahadeeth from weak authorities we would have excused him.'

Saji says,

'He errs excessively. He is sadoq, but one of many mistakes. He has errors that would take too long to be mentioned.'

Muhammad bin Nasr al Marwazi says,

'If Muammal alone relates a certain narration then it becomes obligatory to pause and research the hadeeth as he had a bad memory and erred excessively.'

Hafidh Ibn Hajar has made it clear in his Fath al Bari that there is dh'af (weakness) in Muammal bin Ismaael’s narrations from Sufyan. The above hadeeth has this very chain of narration.

We must also bear in mind that Sayyiduna Wail Ibn Hujr, the very companion who narrates this hadeeth, was a resident of Kufa, and the practice of the people of Kufa was to fasten their hands below the navel. There is nothing to suggest that he contravened this practice. Sufyan al Thawri, from whom Muammal narrates this hadeeth, is himself of the view that the hands should be placed below the navel.

Furthermore, there is another hadeeth narrated by Sayyiduna Wail himself (quoted above) which says that he saw the Prophet place his hands below the navel.

2. Sayyiduna Hubb relates, ‘I saw the Prophet turn from both his right and left and I also saw him place this upon his chest.’ Yahya (one of the narrators) described this as being the right hand upon the left above the wrist joint.

The above hadeeth contains the words ‘upon his chest’. This extra wording is not firmly established or confirmed, because of all the narrators who report this hadeeth from Simak, only one reports this extra wording.

Observe the following narrations of the same hadeeth without the extra wording of ‘upon his chest’.

- Abu al Ahwas reports from Simak bin Harb from Qabeesah bin Hubb from his father that the Prophet would lead us in prayer and would clasp his left hand with his right.

- Shareek reports from Simak from Qabeesah bin Hubb from his father who says (towards the end of a longer hadeeth), ‘I saw him place one of his hands on the other and I also saw him turn once towards his right and once towards his left.’

- Wakee reports from Sufyan from Simak bin Harb from Qabeesah bin Hubb from his father who says, ‘I saw the Prophet place his right hand upon his left in prayer and I also saw him turn away from both his right and left.’

- Daraqutni narrates from Abdul Rahman bin Mahdi and Wakee’, from Sufyan from Simak bin Harb from Qabeesah bin

---

289 Sec. Taba’eed al Taba’eed.
289 Fath al Bari, 9297.
290 Ibn Qudamah in al Mughni 2/22, and others as quoted by the author of Baghithah al Ama‘ee 1/316.
291 Ahmad 21460. Allamah Hashim Sindhi says in Dirham al Surah p.113 that both Simak bin Harb and Qabeesah (two of the narrators of this hadeeth) have been disparaged by some of the alimun of jahri and tadeel.
292 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3934, Ahmad 21467; Ibn Majah 809 and Tirmidhi 252. Imam Tirmidhi adds that it is a hasan hadeeth.
293 Ahmad 21464.
294 Ahmad 21461 & 21475.
Hulb from his father who says, 'I saw the Prophet place his right hand upon his left in prayer.'

The above narrations all clearly show that the wording 'upon his chest' is an unreliable addition on the part of one of the reporters and therefore this particular narration is *shuaith*.

Imam Nimawi adds in his *al T'aleeq al Hasan*:

'I have a suspicion that the wording of this hadith has mistakenly been changed by a writer. The correct words would appear to be "Yadthu hadithi ala hadithi", i.e., "he would place this hand upon this hand", and not "hadithi ala sadrihi", i.e., "this hand upon his chest". Only this wording would be in agreement with the narrators own interpretation of the hadith as is stated in the narration "Yahya described this as being the right hand upon the left above the wrist joint". This would also tally with all the other narrations of this hadith that do not contain the wording "upon his chest", and would also explain why the following authors have not included this narration in their comprehensive books: Haithami in his Majm'a al Zawa'id, Suyuti in his Jam'i al Jawami', and Ali al Muttaqi in his Kanz al Umru. And Allah knows best.'

The author of *Aww al M'abud* also admits that Yahya's commentary does not fit the wording of the hadith.

3. Taawoos narrates that The Messenger of Allah used to place his right hand over his left, and then clasp them firmly on his chest during prayer.

Imam Nimawi has declared this hadith to be weak.

---

This hadith is *mursal*, and its *isnad* contains Sulaiman bin Musa who has been classified as weak by some scholars. Bukhari claims that he has *muskar* narrations. Nasai says that he is not strong in Hadeeth. Hafidh says in *al Tajreeb*, 'He is a sadooq and faqeeh. There is some (leen) 'weakness' in his hadith.' Furthermore, Abu Dawood has recorded the same narration in his *Maraseel* but with a different wording. Instead of 'he clasped them firmly on his chest' that narration reads 'he entwined the fingers of his hands on his chest'.

This hadith is also *mursal* and although *mursal* narrations are not readily accepted by others, the Hanafi *ulama* consider them to be evidence. Therefore, as some have pointed out, this narration is binding on us. However, we say that the *sakeeh* hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr narrated by Ibn Abi Shaibah takes precedence and the *ahadeeth* of Sayyiduna Ali and Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah are more acceptable to us because they explicitly mention the *sunnah* being below the navel. Tawoos's words 'he would' cannot match the words of the companions 'it is *sunnah*'. Also as mentioned earlier the very wording of Tawoos's hadith is in dispute. Moreover, Tawoos's *mursal* narration is opposed by the *mursal* narrations of Ibrahim al Nakhai and Abu Mijlaz.

Imam Nimawi writes in *Aathaar al Sunan* that there are other *ahadeeth* about placing the hands on the chest but they are all weak. Of these he mentions the following:

4. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr narrates, 'I was present with the Prophet. He rose, went towards the *masjid* and entered the *mihrab*. He raised his hands with *takbeer* and then placed his right hand over his left upon his chest.'

Imam Nimawi says,
Its isnad is extremely weak. Dhahabi has said about Muhammad bin Hujr in Mizan that he has munkar narrations. Bukhari has said that there is a question about him. (Bukhari often uses this expression to describe the weakness of a narrator.) Ibn al Turkumani says, "The mother of Abdul Jabbar is the mother of Yahya. I do not know her name or her details (grade of reliability)." Saeed bin Abdul Jabbar is also weak. Dhahabi quotes Nasai in his Mizan as saying that Saeed bin Abdul Jabbar is not strong. Hafidh bin Hajar says in Taqreeb, "Saeed bin Abdul Jabbar al Hadhrami al Kufi is weak."  

5. Aqabah bin Sahban reports that Sayyiduna Ali, commenting on the verse (So pray unto thy Lord, and sacrifice) explained, that this means to place the right hand upon the middle of the left upon the chest.  

Ibn al Turkumani says that both the sanad and the text of this narration are mudtarib.  

6. Abu al Jawza reports from Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas that he said of the verse (So pray unto thy Lord, and sacrifice): This means placing the right hand upon the left in prayer, on the chest.  

Imam Nimawi has declared the isnad of this narration to be weak. He says,  

"Rawh bin al Musayyab is matrook (abandoned). Ibn Hibban says that Rawh Ibn al Musayyab narrates and ascribes fabricated traditions even to reliable authorities. It is not permissible to narrate from him. Ibn Adiyy says that his narrations are not preserved."  

The sanad also contains a third narrator, Amr bin Malik al Nakri. Ibn al Turkumani writes of him in al Jawhar al Naqiyy saying,  

"Ibn Adiyy has said that Amr al Nakri is munkar al Hadeeth even when narrating from reliable authorities. He plagiarised narrations and Abu Ya'la al Mawsili has declared him dhaceef."  

The correct tafseer of this verse  

Ibn Jareer al Tabari, quoting the tafseer of the ulama which he states is the most correct, writes:  

"The meaning of this verse is that 'Oh Prophet of Allah! Make all your prayers sincere for the sake of your Lord, without any share for other false gods and deities, and also make all your sacrifices solely for the sake of your Lord without any share for other idols."  

Ibn Katheer has also quoted these words of Ibn Jareer al Tabari adding that the explanation given by him is extremely good.  

7. Ibn Jarir al Dhibbiyy reports from his father who said, 'I saw Ali clasping his left hand with his right on the wrist, above the navel.'  

Imam Nimawi writes in Aathar al Sunan that the additional wording ‘above the navel’ is not authentic and established. The same hadeeth has been narrated in al Sahih al Jarai'diyyah on the authority of Muslim bin Ibrahim, one of Bukhari's shaikhs, in al Musannaf of Abu Bakr bin Abi Shaibah, and in Bukhari in muallaq, abridged form. However, none of these narrations contain the extra wording ‘above the navel’. The only narrator to include this...
additional wording in the hadith is Abu Badr Shuja' bin al Walid narrating from Abu Talut Abdus Salam bin Abi Hazim. Shuja' has been considered reliable by some, but Abu Hatim says of him as quoted by Hafidh Ibn Hajar in his introduction (to Fath al Bari), and by Dhahabi in his Mizan that 'He is weak in hadith; a sheikh who is not strong and therefore, his word cannot be acceptable in evidence, although he has saheeh ahadeeth from Muhammad bin Amr bin Alqamah.' Hafidh Ibn Hajar also says in his Targheeb, 'He is pious, sadooq and he has mistakes.'\textsuperscript{312}

Furthermore, above the navel does not mean 'upon the chest.'

Chapter 4

The recitation of Surah al Fatihah

There are a great many ahadeeth that emphasise the importance of reciting Surah al Fatihah in salah, such as that reported by Sayyiduna Ubadah bin Samit \& that the Prophet \& said, 'There is no salah for one who does not recite 'the opening chapter of the book.'\textsuperscript{313}

As clarified by the muhaddithun, this hadith and other similar ahadeeth narrated by a number of companions all relate to the Imam and the individual performing salah. It is compulsory for them to pray Surah al Fatihah. As for those praying behind an Imam in the congregation, they are not obliged to pray as the Imam's recitation is sufficient for them. Imam Tirmidhi has quoted Imam Ahmad who commented on the hadith (There is no salah for one .......) by saying 'This is if he is alone.' However, some people insist that these ahadeeth are also for those who are in a congregation and that they must recite Surah al Fatihah behind the Imam in every salah. This approach is problematic because there are many similar ahadeeth of the same category which only mention the general obligation of recitation without specifying any surah, as well as many other narrations which make it obligatory to recite Surah al Fatihah and more. It is obvious that such ahadeeth are not for the members of the congregation but only for the Imam and the individual. We cannot say that the congregation is obliged to recite Surah al Fatihah and another surah behind the Imam, especially when he is also reciting out aloud.\textsuperscript{314} The fact is that the members of the congregation are not obliged to pray at all as the Imam's recitation is sufficient for them. Some of the ahadeeth related to the aforementioned points are quoted below.

\textsuperscript{312} al T'aleeq al Hasan 1/146.

\textsuperscript{313} Bukhari 723 and Muslim 394.

\textsuperscript{314} The prohibition of reciting behind the Imam whilst he is reciting has been covered in the main text.
General recitation.

Allah says:

فَأَيْضَأْنَا مَا فِي الْقُرآنِ

Thus, recite whatever may be possible from the Quran.\(^{315}\)

1. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah \(\Rightarrow\) narrates as part of a longer hadith that the Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) said, 'There is no salah without any recitation.'\(^{316}\)

2. In the longer hadith of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah \(\Rightarrow\) about the one who prayed incompletely,\(^{317}\) the Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) says, 'When you stand for prayer, pronounce the takbeer, and recite whatever Quran you may know.'\(^{318}\)

Recitation of Surah al Fatiha and more.

1. Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri \(\Rightarrow\) says, 'We have been commanded to read the *opening chapter of the book* and whatever else may be possible from the Quran.'\(^{319}\)

2. Sayyiduna Ubada bin Samit \(\Rightarrow\) reports that the Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) said, 'There is no salah for one who does not recite the mother (essential chapter al Fatiha) of the book and more.'\(^{320}\)

3. Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri \(\Rightarrow\) relates that the Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) said, 'The key to salah is purity, its consecration is takbeer, and its deconsecrating act is the salam. And there is no salah for one who does not recite “Alhamdu...” (the opening chapter of the book) and a surah in an obligatory or other (prayer).'\(^{321}\)

Ahadeeth such as those mentioned above which stress the obligation of Surah al Fatiha (or more) are for the Imam or the individual praying alone, not the muqtadi praying behind someone. Imam Tirmidhi has quoted Imam Ahmad who commented on the above hadith (There is no salah for one ...) by saying 'This is if he is alone.' This is also the view of Imam Abu Hanifa, Imam Malik, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, their followers and the clear majority of the ulama.

Recitation behind the Imam whilst he is also reading out aloud.

Allah says:

And when the Quran is recited, listen to it attentively and remain silent, that you may receive mercy.\(^{322}\)

1. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah \(\Rightarrow\) says, 'The Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) turned around after a salah in which he had recited loudly. He enquired, “Has any one of you recited (behind me)?” A man replied, “I did.” The Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) said, “I say: what is it with me? I am being contested for the Quran.” After the people heard this from the Prophet \(\Rightarrow\) they stopped reciting with him (behind him) in those salah in which he would pray loudly.'\(^{323}\)

\(^{315}\) al Muzzammil 73/20.
\(^{316}\) Ahmad 8015 and Muslim 396.
\(^{317}\) See Chapter 1 in Part Three.
\(^{318}\) Bukhari 6290 & 760.
\(^{319}\) Ahmad 10615, Abu Dawood 818, Abu Ya’laa 2/417 no. 236, and Ibn Hibban 1787. Imam Nimari says that its isnad is saheeh (350). Shawkani quotes Ibn Sayyid al Naas in *Nail al Awzaar* 2/218 as saying about the above hadith of Abu Dawood, 'Its isnad is saheeh, and its narrators are authentic.'
\(^{320}\) Muslim 394, Abu Dawood 822 and Ibn Hibban 1783.
\(^{321}\) Tirmidhi 238. He adds that it is hasan.
\(^{322}\) al A’na’f 7/204.
\(^{323}\) Malik 194, Ahmad 7760, Ibn Majah 849, Abu Dawood 826. Tirmidhi 312 and Nasai 919.
2. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ reports that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘The Imam has been appointed so that he may be followed. Thus, when he says the takbeer, you say it also, and when he recites remain silent.’

3. Sayyiduna Abu Musa al Asha'ree ﷺ says, ‘The Prophet ﷺ taught us that “When you stand up for prayer then one of you should lead the rest, and when the Imam recites remain silent.”

4. Abu Wail reports that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud ﷺ was asked about reciting behind the Imam. He replied, ‘Remain silent for the recitation (of the Imam). For indeed there is a duty in salah for which the Imam is sufficient for you.’

5. Nafi' reports that when Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ would be asked, ‘Should one recite behind the Imam?’ he would reply, ‘When one of you prays behind the Imam then the Imam's recitation is sufficient for him. When he prays alone he should recite,’ Nafi' adds, ‘Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ would not recite behind the Imam.’

6. Sayyiduna Jabir bin Abdullah ﷺ relates that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘One who prays behind an Imam, the recitation of the Imam is sufficient for him.’

The above hadith has also been reported from the Prophet ﷺ on the authority of the following noble Sahabah: Sayyiduna Anas, Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas, Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah, Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri, Sayyiduna Ibn Umar, Sayyiduna Ali, and Sayyiduna Abu al Dardaa.

7. Wahb bin Kaysan reports that he heard Sayyiduna Jabir bin Abdullah ﷺ say, ‘He who prays one rak'ah in which he does not recite Surah al Fatiha has in fact not prayed at all, unless he is behind an Imam.’

Reciting behind an Imam in silent salah.

Not reciting Surah al Fatiha behind the Imam in any salah is the view of Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Ibn Abi Layla, Sufyan al Thawri, Hasan bin Hayy, and their followers. This is the most famous verdict of the Hanafi fiqh and it is also one of the narrations

---

Footnotes:
324 Ahmad 9151. Also reported by Ahmad bin Mauce' and Abd bin Hamaid in their Musnads with a saheeh sanad as quoted in Mishbah al Zujajah Chapter 150, hadeeth 313. Narrated also by Ibn Majah 846, Abu Dawood 603, Nasai 921 & 922 and Tahawi 1/217. Imam Nimawi says that its isnaad is saheeh. Imam Abdul Hayy al Luckhnawee categorically concludes in his Imam al Kalam p165 that the hadeeth is authentic after quoting a number of ulama who have declared it saheeh including Imam Ahmad.
325 Ahmad 19224, Muslim 404 (as part of a longer hadeeth), and Ibn Majah 847.
326 Imam Muhammad in his al Muswatta 120 & 122, Ibn Abi Shaibah 3780, and Tahawi 1/217. Imam Nimawi says that its isnaad is saheeh (369).
327 Mafik 193.
329 Daruqutni 1238 & 1252.
330 Daruqutni 1229 & 1230.
331 Tabarani in al Muyjam al Awnah as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/111. Hafidh Haithami says that the sanad contains Haroon al Abdi who is matrook.
332 Daruqutni 1225.
333 Daruqutni 1234.
334 Daruqutni 1248.
335 Malik 188 and Tirmidhi 313.
A number of Hanafi ulama have also held the view that, although not obligatory, it is better to recite Surah al Fatihah behind the Imam in silent salah such as Dhuhr and Asr. (If done, it should be so quietly and in such a manner that it does not confuse others or clash with their recitation, especially the Imam’s.) The desirability of reciting Surah al Fatihah behind the Imam in silent salah has also been narrated from Imam Abu Hanifah as mentioned by Zahidi in al Muytabaa,337 and more famously from Imam Muhammad bin Hasan al Shaibaani as quoted by many authors. This was also the view of many later Hanafi ulama including Imam Abu Hafs al Kabeer (one of the students of Imam Muhammad, d. 264 AH), Shaikh al Tasleem (d. 737 AH), Mulla Ali al Qari (d. 1014 AH), Shaikh Ahmad Mulla Jeewan (d. 1130 AH), Shah Abdul Raheem Dihlawi and his son Shah Waitullah Dihlawi (d. 1176 AH), and Allamah Abdul Hayy Luckhnawi (d. 1304 AH). Many authors including Allamah Abdul Hayy Luckhnawi and Shaikh Ahmad Mulla Jeewan have actually ascribed the above opinion to a large group of Hanafi ulama and not just a select few.

Allamah Abdul Hayy Luckhnawi has a comprehensive work exclusively on the subject titled Imam al Kalam fi ma Yatallaq bi al Qiraat Khalif al Imam in which, after extensive research, he concludes that the above view (the desirability of reciting Surah al Fatihah behind the Imam in silent salah) is the most correct. Moulana Dhafar Ahmad Thanvi Uthmani also dedicated a book, Fatihah al Kalam fi al Qiraat Khalif al Imam to the topic in which he confirms that it is permissible for the congregation to recite Surah al Fatihah behind the Imam in silent salah.

Chapter 5

Ameen

Ahadeeth of saying Ameen silently.

1. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr says, ‘The Prophet led us in salah. When he recited ‘Ghairil Maghdihoobi Aalaihim...’ he said Ameen silently. (Literally, ‘He kept his voice silent/low.’) He also placed his right hand on his left hand, and said the ‘salam’ to his right and left."

The above hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr has been narrated by both Sufyan al Thawri and Sh’ubah. Both of them differ in their wording. Sufyan says ‘He raised his voice’ whilst Sh’ubah says ‘He lowered his voice’. Some scholars have preferred the narration of Sufyan arguing that Sh’ubah erred in his report of the same hadith. However, this is not accepted by other ulama. They prefer Sh’ubah’s narration over Sufyan’s and have given detailed answers to the questions raised about Sh’ubah’s report.

Quoting Imam Bukhari’s objections Imam Tirmidhi writes in his Sunan,

‘I heard Muhammad (al Bukhari) say that the hadith of Sufyan is more saheeh than the hadith of Sh’ubah in this regard. Sh’ubah has erred in a number of places of this hadith. He said that this is related from “Hujr Abu al Anbas” whereas it is “Hujr bin al Anbas” whose kunyah is “Abu al Sakan.” He has added Alqmam bin Wail in the chain of narration even though he is not in it. It has, in fact, been related by Hujr bin al Anbas (directly and without Alqmam) from Wail bin Hujr. Sh’ubah has also said “He lowered his voice” even though it is “He stretched his voice.”

337 As quoted by Allamah Abdul Hayy al Luckhnawi in Imam al Kalam, p87.

338 Abu Dawood Tyalisi 1024, Ahmad 18363, Tirmidhi 248; Tabarani in al Mujam al Kabeer 22/43 no 109, 229 no 3, & 2245 no 112; Daraqutni 1256, Hakim 2913 and Baihaqi 2447. Hakim declared it saheeh and Dahabhi agreed.
Tirmidhi has mentioned another illah (defect) of the hadeeth in his *al Hal al Kubra*. He writes,

“1 asked Muhammad bin Ismaeel (al Bukhari), “Did Alqamah hear hadeeth from his father?” He replied, “He was born six months after his father’s death.”

Imam Nimawi says in answer to the above:

‘All of these defects mentioned by al Bukhari are unacceptable. First of all his saying that Hujr is “Ibn al Anbas” is incorrect. His father’s name is Anbas and his own kunyah is like his father’s name ‘Abu al Anbas’ and there is nothing preventing him from having another kunyah “Abu al Sakan.”

This has been categorically stated by Ibn Hibban in his Kitab al Thiqaat where he says:

“Hujr bin Anbas Abu al Sakan al Kufi. It is he who is also called Hujr Abu al Anbas. He narrated from Ali and Wail bin Hujr and Salamah bin Kuhail has reported hadeeth from him.”

Imam Nimawi continues:

“Sufyan al Thawri has also followed up Sh’ubah in narrating from Abu al Anbas. Abu Dawood has recorded a hadeeth in the chapter of *Ameen*, with the following chain: Sufyan from Salamah bin Kuhail from Hujr Abu al Anbas al Hadrami.

‘Baishiqi has also said in his *al Sunan al Kubra*, “As for his statement ‘Hujr bin al Anbas’ it should be known that Muhammad bin Kathheet has also narrated the same from Thawri.”

‘Daruqutni has also recorded a hadeeth in his *Sunan* in the chapter of *Ameen* with a *sanad* that contains Sufyan narrating from Salamah bin Kuhail from Hujr Abu al Anbas. Daruqutni adds, ‘This is Ibn al Anbas.’

‘It is, thus, proven that Sh’ubah is not alone in taking the name of Abu al Anbas. In fact, Muhammad bin Kathheet, Wakee, and Mu’haribi have all mentioned his name in the chain of Sufyan al Thawri.

‘Bukhari’s assertion that the *sanad* does not contain Alqamah and Sh’ubah has mentioned him is also incorrect, because according to some narrations, Hujr heard this hadeeth from Alqamah from Wail, and also directly from Wail himself. In a narration of Ahmad bin

Haalbal Hujr Abu al Anbas says, “I heard Alqamah bin Wail narrate from Wail and I also heard Wail himself say........” Abu Dawood al Tayalisi has also recorded a similar chain of this hadeeth in which Hujr says, ‘I heard Alqamah bin Wail narrated from Wail, and I also heard Wail himself say........” Abu Muslim al Kajji has also reported a similar chain in his *Sunan* wherein Hujr narrates from Alqamah from Wail as claiming to hear it directly from Wail himself. Thus, it has been established that Sh’ubah made no mistake in including Alqamah in the sanad.’

Some scholars have preferred Sufyan’s narration over Sh’ubah’s on the simple claim that Sufyan was more knowledgeable and remembered ahadeeth better than Sh’ubah. Imam Nimawi answers this argument saying,

‘Claims that the Muhaddithun are unanimous in their opinion that Sufyan is (Ahfadh) ‘of a better memory and more preserving of the ahadeeth’ than Sh’ubah are also incorrect. Tirmidhi reports in his *al Hal* that Ali said, “I asked Yahya, ‘Who of the two better remembered and preserved long ahadeeth, Sufyan or Sh’ubah?’ He replied, ‘Sh’ubah is the one for that.’” Yahya bin Saeed also said, “Sh’ubah had greater knowledge of the narrations - who was narrating from whom, and Sufyan was a master of chapters.”

Imam Nimawi adds,

‘This shows that Sh’ubah remembered and preserved long hadeeth better than Sufyan. Furthermore, I have another good reason for giving preference to Sh’ubah’s narration over Sufyan’s, which is that Sh’ubah would never do taddlee, neither from authentic narrators nor weak ones, whereas Sufyan often did taddlee as is well known. And in this particular narration Sh’ubah has explicitly mentioned having been reported to and having heard the narration, but Sufyan has not done so, simply reporting from the narrator saying ‘An’ (from). This shows that Sh’ubah’s narration of ‘lowering the voice’ is more reliable than Sufyan’s report of ‘raising the voice’, for there is the possibility of taddlee in the narration of Sufyan al Thawri.

‘The answer to Ibn al Qayyim’s claim in *Hitam al Muwajjeen* that another reason for preferring the narration of ‘raising the voice’ is the following up of the same narration by Ala bin Salih and Muhammad bin Salamah, is that both these narrators are not so
authentic that their different narrations should have any bearing on the narration of Sh’ubah.

‘If someone claims that Abu Dawood al Tayalisi has recorded a narration of Sh’ubah which is similar to the narration of Sufyan, i.e., “He raised his voice”, then it should be known that this is a ‘shadh’ report of Abu al Waleed. Sh’ubah’s other companions such as Abu Dawood Tayalisi, Muhammad bin Ja’far, Yazeed bin Zareeqh, Amr bin Marzoq, and others have all differed from Abu al Waleed and narrated from Sh’ubah the words ‘He lowered his voice’. Thus, the authentic and correctly preserved narration from Sh’ubah is ‘He lowered his voice’.

Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani writes:

‘Ahmad says as reported by Abu Talib, “Sh’ubah is more authentic and established in masaail than Aa’nash. He is also more knowledgeable of the hadeeth of masaail and if it was not for Sh’ubah the hadeeth of masaail would have disappeared. Sh’ubah was better in hadeeth than Sufyan al Thawri. There was no one in Sh’ubah’s time like him or better than him in hadeeth. This was his lot.” Muhammad bin al Abbas al Nasa’i says, “I asked Abu Abdullah (Ahmad bin Hanbal) “Who is more stronger (and established in hadeeth) Sh’ubah or Sufyan?” He replied, “Sufyan was a hujjat and a pious man, and Sh’ubah was stronger than him (in hadeeth) and more fearing of Allah.” Hammad bin Zaid says, “I do not care who opposes me as long as Sh’ubah agrees with me, and if Sh’ubah opposes me in something then I leave it.”

He also says:

‘For these reasons, the narration of Sh’ubah is to be preferred, and in our view the meaning of Sufyan’s hadeeth is that he stretched his voice whilst saying Ameen silently, not that he raised his voice, especially since his own view was to say Ameen silently. Narrations that clearly contain the words ‘he raised his voice’ are not without their defects and lack authenticity. Even if we were to assume their authenticity, they will be understood to refer to ‘ta’leen’ (i.e., this was only done at particular times for the purpose of educating the congregation) similar to what Sayyiduna Umar Ⲥ would do with

thana and Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah Ⲥ with ta’awwudh. There is also a further explanation for the differences in the narrations of Sh’ubah and Sufyan, which is that they are referring to different occasions. Sayyiduna Wail Ⲥ narrated both according to different instances. It is more obvious, however, that the prevalent practice was to say it silently and this is supported by the following words of Wail Ⲥ in the narration of Dulabi: “He said Ameen, stretching his voice. I do not think he did this except to teach us.”

It should also be noted that Sufyan al Thawri’s own practice was to say Ameen silently.

Bukhari’s assertion that Alqamah did not hear hadeeth from his father is also incorrect, because this has been established beyond doubt as declared by the later Muhaddithun. Alqamah’s reporting directly from his father and having heard his hadeeth is proven by many reports.

2. Hasan reports that Samurah bin Jundub and Imran bin Hussain reminisced and Samurah bin Jundub mentioned that he remembered two ‘saktahs’ (brief moments of silence) of the Prophet Ⲥ: a saktah when he pronounced the first takbeer, and a saktah when he completed the recitation of ‘Ghairil Maghdoobi Alaihim…’. Samurah remembered this but Imran bin Hussain found this strange. They wrote to Ubay bin K’ab about this. In his reply to them it was stated that Samurah had remembered (correctly).

Imam Nimawi explains in his al T’aliq al Hasan.

‘It is most probable that the first saktah was for quietly reciting the thana, and the second saktah was for saying Ameen silently. If we do not provide this explanation but say that the second saktah was so that

341 Ilīla al Sunn 2/254.
342 Ahmad 19753 and Abu Dawood 779. Imam Nimawi (382) quotes Ibn Hajir as saying that its isnad is saheeh.
he could regain his breath as some have claimed then this would mean that the congregation would say Ameen before the Prophet ﷺ. This is because the previous ahadeeth show that the followers of the Imam are to say Ameen immediately after his recitation of 'Ghaairil Maghdiibobi Atahim...', thus their Ameen would be said during the Imam's sakah and his Ameen would follow theirs, whereas the Prophet ﷺ has forbidden the congregation to outdo the Imam in any way. 343

3. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ relates that the Prophet ﷺ would teach us saying, 'Do not try to outdo the Imam. When he pronounces the takbeer, you say it also; when he recites 'Wa La haleen', then say Ameen; when he performs the rak' u you do it also; and when he says 'Sami Allahu li man Hamidah' say 'Allahumma Rabbana laka Hamd'.' 344

As is indicated, the Ameen should be said silently as 'Allahumma Rabbana laka Hamd' is said silently.

4. Ibrahim al Nakhai says, 'There are five things which the Imam says silently: 'Subhanakallahuma wa bi Hamdika...'. Taawwudh, Basmalah, Ameen, and 'Allahumma Rabbana laka Hamd'.' 345

5. Abu Wail reports that Ali and Abdullah bin Mas'ud ﷺ would not say Bismillah, Taawwudh or Ameen loudly. 346

6. Abu Wail says that Umar and Ali ﷺ would not say the basmalah, taawwudh or Ameen loudly. 347

It should also be remembered that Ameen is a dua' and so best made silently. Allah says, 'Call out to Your Lord, humbly and silently'. Imam Bukhari has quoted Atta in his Saheeh as saying Ameen is a dua'. The saying of Ameen should be no different to the other duas of salah such as tahmeed, tashahhud, taawwudh, basmalah, etc., especially since it is not part of the Quran and only the Quran is normally recited loudly.

Ibn Jareer al Tabari says as quoted by Ibn al Turkumani in al Jawhar al Najiyy.

'This has been reported from Ibn Mas'ud, Nakhai, Sh'abi and Ibrahim al Taimi ﷺ; they would say Ameen silently. The truth is that both narrations (of saying Ameen loudly and silently) are correct and a group of ulama has acted on each of them, but if you are to choose then say Ameen silently because this was the practice of most of the companions and Tabi'im.' 345

Ibn al Qayyim says in Zad al M'ood:

'If the Imam says it (qunoot) loudly to teach the congregation there is no harm, for indeed Umar ﷺ recited thana loudly to teach the congregation and Ibn Abbas ﷺ read Surah al Fatiha loudly in the janazah salah to show that it was sunnah. Similar to this is the Imam's saying Ameen loudly. All this is related to that kind of permissible difference for which no one should be criticised, neither those who do it nor those who leave it. 349

343 al Tuleeq al Hasan, 382.
344 Muslim 415.
345 Imam Muhammad in his Kitab al Aathaar 83 (mentioning four instead of five); Abdul Razzaq 2597, and Ibn Abi Shaibah 8849. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (386). Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani says that its narrators are authentic (724).
346 Tabarani in al Mujam al Kabeeer as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/108. Hafidh Haithami says that the isnad contains Abu Sa'd al Baqal who is authentic and a mukaddim. Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani classifies it as saheeh 2/250.
347 Ibn Jareer al Tabari in Tahdheeb al Aathaar as quoted by Ibn al Turkumani 2/70. Also reported by Tahawi 1/204. Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani says that its narrators are those of the six books of hadith except for Abu Sa'd al Baqal who is authentic and a mukaddim.
348 al Jawhar al Najiyy 1/32.
349 Zad al Maad 1/275.
Ahadeeth of raising the voice with Ameen.

Following is a discussion about those ahadeeth that are often quoted as evidence for saying Ameen loudly. The ahadeeth are quoted along with the relevant explanations and commentary given by the ulama.

1. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ☪️ reports that when the Prophet ☪️ would recite ‘Wa Ladhuala’een’ he would say Ameen, raising his voice. 350

There are many explanations provided by the ulama for this hadeeth. Some of which, as explained by Imam Nimawi in his Aathaar al Sunan, are as follows:

1. The raising of the voice not too loud, i.e., in such manner that some members of the first row can hear, is not contrary to the desired silence of the quiet prayers. It has been related in Bukhari and Muslim that the Prophet ☪️ would recite in Dhuhur salah in such a manner that they would at times hear a verse. Tabarani has also narrated on the authority of Sayyiduna Abu Malik al Ash'ari ☪️ that the Prophet ☪️ led them in Dhuhur salah and recited Surah al Fatiha allowing those who were close to hear him.

While discussing the question of saying Bismillah loudly, Ibn Abd al Hadi writes in al Tareeq that if a member of the congregation is close to the Imam or right next to him and he hears what the Imam is to say silently, then this is not considered raising ones voice (jahr), for it has been narrated that the Prophet ☪️ would lead them in Dhuhur salah and at times allow them to hear one or two verses after Surah al Fatiha. The author of al Durr al Mukhtar has a statement to the same effect.

Therefore, the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ☪️ is to be understood in the same light, i.e., when saying Ameen the Prophet ☪️ raised his voice slightly, loud enough for those who were close to him to be able to hear him, but not like his raising of the voice whilst saying takbeer etc. This explanation is supported by some narrations in which the companion ☪️ says, ‘He (the Prophet ☪️) said Ameen. I heard him and I was behind him’, and also by the hadeeth of Abu Dawood in which Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ☪️ says, ‘He (the Prophet ☪️) said Ameen so that those who were close to him in the first row heard him.’

2. Raising the voice whilst saying Ameen was done at times to teach the congregation, just as Sayyiduna Umar bin al Khattab ☪️ would raise his voice whilst reciting the tawwaal in the beginning of salah, and Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ☪️ would read the ta’awwudh loudly. This is supported by a weak351 narration recorded by Hafidh Abu Bishr al Dulabi in Kitab al Asmaa wa al Kuna on the authority of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ☪️ who says, ‘When the Prophet ☪️ completed his salah I saw him turn to both this side (right) and this side (left) until I saw his cheek. He also recited “…’ and said Ameen, stretching his voice. I think he did this only to teach us’.352

2. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ☪️ reports that when the Prophet ☪️ would complete the recitation of the mother of the Quran, he would raise his voice and say Ameen.353

Imam Nimawi says:

‘Daruqutni has declared this hadeeth hasan, and Hakim has said it is saheeh according to the conditions of Bukhari and Muslim. Ibn al Qayyim has also been mistaken by the tasheeh of Hakim for he says in I‘laa al Muwagleen, “Hakim has narrated it with a saheeh isnad.”

Imam Nimawi adds:

350 Darini 1247 and Abu Dawood 922.
351 Imam Nimawi says that its isnad contains Yahya bin Salamah who has been declared authentic by Hakim but weak by others.
352 al T‘aleeq al Hasan 1/186.
353 Daruqutni 1259 and Hakim 812.
"The sanad of this hadith contains Ishaq bin Ibrahimi bin al Alaa al Zubaidi al Zibreeq. None of the six famous authors of hadith have recorded any of his narrations in their books. In fact Nasai and Abu Dawood have declared him to be dhaeef, and Muhammad bin Auf al Tai has branded him a liar. Dhahabi writes in al Mizaan: "Abu Hatim said, "There is no harm in him. I have heard Ibn Meeen praise him." Nasai said, "He is not thiqah." Abu Dawood said, "He is nothing" and the Muhaddith of Hims Muhammad bin Auf al Tai has branded him a liar." Hafidh writes in Tahdheeb al Tahdheeb, "Ajuri has reported from Abu Dawood that Muhammad bin Auf al Tai said, "I do not doubt that Ishaq bin Zibreeq lies." Hafidh also says in Taqreeb, "He is Sadoog, who errs excessively. Muhammad bin Auf has openly declared that he lies."

Imam Nimawi continues,

"Thus, it is proven that the hadith is not without weakness. Furthermore, its wording is not preserved and Daruqutni has admitted this in his al Ilai where he says, 'There are differences from Zubaidi in both the text and chain. Abdullah bin Salih relates from Zubaidi from Zuhri from Saeed and Abu Salamah from Abu Hurairah that when the Prophet would complete the recitation of the opening chapter of the book, he would raise his voice with Ameen', whereas all the rest have narrated from Zubaidi from Zuhri from Abu Salamah alone from Abu Hurairah that the Prophet said, 'When the Imam says Ameen, then you say Ameen.' Daruqutni then adds, 'The correctly preserved narration from Zubaidi is 'When the Imam says Ameen, you say Ameen.'

Imam Nimawi then concludes,

'Therefore, Hakim's claim that this hadith is saheeh according to the conditions of Bukhari and Muslim is null and void.'

3. Sayyidana Abu Hurairah said, 'People have left saying Ameen. When the Prophet would say 'Ghairil Maghdhoobi Alaihim Waladthaalleen' he would say Ameen until the people of the first row would hear it and the masjid would shake because of it.'

Imam Nimawi says:

'It's isnad is dhaeef because of Bishr bin Rafi. As mentioned in al Mizaan Bukhari says 'He is not followed up in his narrations.' Ahmad says 'dhaeef'; Ibn Meeen says, 'He has related munkar athadeeth.' Nasai says that he is not strong. Iba Hibban says that he relates fabricated things in which he is the central narrator. Hafidh says in Tahdheeb al Tahdheeb that Ibn Abd al Barr has written in al Kun, 'He is dhaeef and munkar of hadith according to them (the Muhaddithun). He also writes in his Kiab al Insaf that they are unanimous in declaring his hadith to be munkar, in their discarding his narrations, and in their not accepting him as an authority. The ultima of hadith do not differ about this." Hafidh also writes in his Taqreeb, 'Bishr bin Rafi is dhaeef in hadith.'

Imam Nimawi adds that this hadith has also been reported by Abu Dawood from Bishr bin Rafi, (also by Abu Ya'laa, Daruqutni and Iba Hibban, but all) without the words (thus, the masjid would not shake with it). The wording of that particular hadith (reported by Abu Dawood) is as follows: 'When the Prophet would recite 'Ghairil Maghdhoobi...' he would say Ameen until those who were close to him in the first row could hear him. Abu Ya'laa has also narrated the same hadith from Bishr bin Rafi' with the following wording: 'People have left saying Ameen. When the Prophet would recite 'Ghairil Maghdhoobi...' he would say Ameen until the first row would hear.' It is thus apparent that the additional wording of (thus, the masjid would shake with it) reported by Ibn Majah has not been followed up by others. Moreover, this addition contradicts the former part of the hadith where the narrator says (until the people of the first row would hear him."

354 al T'aleeq al Hasan 378.
355 Ibn Majah 853. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is weak (379). Boosereee says in Misbah al Zujajah, Chapter 151, hadith no. 314, 'This is a weak isnad. Abu Abdullah's details are unknown, and Bishr has been weakened by Ahmad and Ibn Hibban says of him that he relates fabricated narrations.'
356 al T'aleeq al Hasan 379,
4. Sayyidatuna Umm al Husayn relates that she prayed behind the Prophet. When he recited ‘Wa Ladhalaalenn’ he said Ameen. She heard him, and she was in the row of the women.357

Imam Nimawi has declared this hadeeth to be dhaeef, most probably because of Ismaeel bin Muslim al Makki. Ahmad calls him munkar al hadeeth, Nasai and others say of him, marrook (abandoned); Ibn al Madini says, ‘I heard Yahya say when he was asked about Ismaeel bin Muslim al Makki, “He was always confused. He would narrate one hadeeth to us in three different ways.” Ibn al Madini says, “His hadeeth should not be recorded.” Ibn Maaen says, “He is nothing.”

5. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that the Prophet said, ‘When the Imam says Ameen, say Ameen. For one whose Ameen coincides with that of the angels, he will have all his past sins forgiven.’358

Some take the meaning of the above hadeeth to be that the Imam will say Ameen loudly and this should be followed by the Ameen of the congregation. However, the majority of the scholars have not interpreted the above hadeeth literally, but have taken it to mean ‘when the Imam intends to say Ameen. This is necessary to reconcile this hadeeth with the other narrations on the subject. This figurative reading of the text is similar to the way we should approach the words of Allah (O believers! When you stand for prayer then wash your faces...... i.e., when you intend to stand for prayer.) This has been confirmed by Hafidh Ibn Hajr Asqalani in his Fath al Bari and also by Suyuti in his Tanweer al Hawalk.

357 Ishaq bin Rahooyah in his Masnad as quoted by Hafidh Zailae. Also reported by Tabarani in al Mu'jam al Kaber 25/158, no.383. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad contains Ismaeel bin Muslim al Makki who is weak (380).

358 Malik 195, Bukhari 747 and Muslim 410.

Imam Nimawi concludes,

‘The saying aloud of Ameen has not been established from the Prophet or the four caliphs, and whatever has been related in this regard, it is not without fault.’

Saying Ameen silently was the practice of Sayyiduna Umar, Sayyiduna Ali, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud, Ibrahim al Nakhi, Sh’abi, Ibrahim al Taimi, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, their followers and the people of Kufah. Imam Shafeeqe in his later view also says that the muqtadai should say Ameen silently. Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri says that he has not come across any Maliki scholar who says that Ameen should be said loudly. Imam Malik says, ‘Those who are behind the Imam should say Ameen silently.’ 359 Ibn Jarirc al Tabari claims as quoted by Ibn al Turkmuni in al Jawhar al Naqiy 360 that this was the practice of most of the companions and Tabi’un.
Chapter 6

Raising the hands

Both practices of raising the hands and not raising them are sunnah, and both have been quoted to the degree of tawatur from every generation of Muslims from the time of the Sahabah, Tabi’un and tabi’ Tabieen till today. Therefore, there is no real difference except a question of which one of the two is to preferred and desirable.

Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri writes:

‘Since both practices of raising the hands and not raising them are mutawatir there are three possible methods: 1) Giving preference to the practice of raising the hands. 2) Giving preference to the practice of not raising them. 3) A choice of any one of the two. Each of these options has been adopted by certain ulama. As for the ahadeeth, some of them are explicit in mentioning the raising of the hands, others are equally explicit in mentioning that the hands should not be raised, whilst the rest of the ahadeeth on the topic of salah are silent with no mention of the raising of hands. If we adhere to the ahadeeth that are clear in mentioning that the hands should not be raised our ahadeeth will be fewer in number compared to those that mention the raising of the hands, but if we add those ahadeeth that are silent then the number of ahadeeth for not raising the hands is far greater. This is because the silence of a hadeeth on a particular practice (whilst still elaborating on everything else) is evidence that it should not be adopted. And why not? We see the ahadeeth of the description of salah touch upon all the actions of salah including its arkan, its obligatory, sunnah, and desirable movements, and yet mention nothing of the raising of the hands except in the beginning. What else can be assumed when this is the position of the ahadeeth?’

Ahadeeth of not raising the hands except in the beginning.

1. Alqamah reports that Abdullah bin Mas’ud said, ‘Should I not lead you in salah in the manner of

361 M’aarif al Sunan 2/458.
the Prophet ﷺ?" He then prayed and did not raise his hands except in the beginning.  

After narrating this hadith Imam Tirmidhi adds:

“There is a narration of the same meaning on the authority of Baraa bin Azib. Abdullah bin Mas’ud’s hadith is hasan, and many of the Prophet’s learned companions are of the same view, i.e., the hands should not be raised during salah except once in the beginning. This is also the view of Sufyan al Thawri and the people of Kufah.”

Imam Nimawi says:

“This hadith has also been declared saheeh by Ibn Hazm. Tirmidhi has quoted Abdullah bin al Mubarak as saying that the hadith of raising the hands (and then he mentioned the hadith of Zuhri from Salim from his father) is established, but the hadith of Abdullah bin Mas’ud that ‘the Prophet ﷺ would not raise his hands except in the beginning’ is not.”

Imam Nimawi answers this claim of Abdullah bin al Mubarak saying:

“There are two hadith reported from Abdullah bin Mas’ud about raising the hands: one hadith which mentions his own practice as recorded by Abu Dawood, Nasai, Tirmidhi and others, and another hadith describing the practice of the Prophet ﷺ himself as reported by Tahawi and others. This second hadith is the report of a particular narrator who has rendered the general meaning of the words of Ibn Mas’ud as ‘Should I not lead you in salah in the manner of the Prophet ﷺ’ and thus attributed this directly to the Prophet ﷺ. What is apparent, therefore, is that Ibn al Mubarak has denied the authenticity of the second hadith which says that the Prophet ﷺ would not raise his hands except in the beginning, not the authenticity of the first hadith describing Ibn Mas’ud’s own practice. Whatever the case may be, Allamah Ibn Daqeeg al Eid al Shafiee has answered this by saying that even if this narration is not established in the view of Ibn al Mubarak, it does not prevent us from studying it. The authenticity of the report rests on Aasim bin Kulaib and Ibn Meeen has classified him as ‘thiqoh’ authentic.”

Certain people have raised some very weak and unsustainable objections about this hadith. However, all their objections are incorrect and have been answered in great depth by the ulama.

Imam Nimawi also discusses these questions and finally says:

“The conclusion, therefore, is that this hadith with this additional wording (of ‘He did not repeat the raising of the hands’ or ‘He did not raise his hands except once’) is saheeh, and all criticisms levelled at it are repudiated. Their claim that Ibn Mas’ud may possibly have forgotten the raising of the hands except in the beginning just as he forgot about the placing of the hands on the knees in ruk’u and other things is a very despicable claim indeed. It is but an allegation without evidence, and there is no way of knowing that Abdullah bin Mas’ud knew this and then forgot it. In fact, reason declares it strange and improbable. The truth is that attributing forgetfulness about the raising of the hands in salah, something which is a recurring practice morning and evening, day and night, to Abdullah bin Mas’ud who faithfully remained in the company of the Prophet ﷺ, and who was a personal attendant for a very long time, is not void of insolence.

Abdullah bin Mas’ud’s placing his hands between his knees in ruk’u was not because he had forgot, but because this was prescribed in the Shariah and then later abrogated, as has been clearly mentioned in reports, and he was not yet aware of the abrogation.  

Similar is the case with all the claims of forgetfulness to Abdullah bin Mas’ud: they were because of other reasons, but not forgetfulness, as has been explained by the scholars in the relevant places. The first person to ascribe forgetfulness to Abdullah bin Mas’ud in these instances was Abu Bakr bin Ishaq whose statement has been quoted by Baihaqi in his al Sunan and Ibn Abd al Hadi in al Taneeq. Ibn al Turkumani

362 Imam Abu Hanifah as recorded in Jami’i al Masaneed 1/355. Also reported by Ibn Abi Shaiba in his al Musannif 2441 as well as his Masnad 322; Ahmad 3672, Abu Dawood 748, Tirmidhi 257; Nasai in al Majhoba 1058 and also in al Sunan al Kubra 645 & 1099; Abu Ya’laa 5040 & 5302, and Baihaqi 2531. Ibn Hazam 2264, Ibn al Turkumani 2/113 and Imam Nimawi 402 have all declared the hadith saheeh.

363 Many ulama have given an alternative explanation which is that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud was aware of the abrogation of the original practice of tabeeq but considered it to be merely a rukhsah (concession) and so rather than accept the benefit of the concession he preferred to continue with tabeeq and set upon aqeeqah, (the concept of foregoing the concession in the hope of receiving a greater reward for adhering to the original).
has extensively refuted the words of this Abu Bakr bin Ishaq in his *al Jawhar al Naqiyy fi al Radd ala al Baihaqi.*

2. The earlier hadeeth has also been reported by Nasai with the following wording: ‘Should I not inform you of the salah of the Prophet?’ He then stood up and raised his hands once in the beginning. He did not raise them again.’

3. Sayyiduna Baraa bin Azib ‏ relates that when the Prophet would begin salah he would raise his hands close to his ears and then not raise them again.

Abu Dawood has said after narrating this hadeeth with a different chain of narration, ‘This hadeeth is not saheeh.’ It appears that he has made this comment about this particular chain because it contains Muhammad bin Abdul Rahman bin Abi Layla. (Muhaddith Dhaafar Ahmad al Uthmani has declared the hadeeth to be hasan despite Ibn Abi Layla on the understanding that he is suitable as a narrator for a shahid. Imam Tirmidhi has classified a number of his hadeeth hasan.)

As for the hadeeth, he quotes it before this with a number of chains and does not declare it to be dhaeef but merely observes that some narrators have not included the words ‘and then not raise them again’ in their narrations from Yazeed. Some have taken this as evidence that these words are not established in the hadeeth. This is, however, incorrect. Sufyan reports this hadeeth from Yazeed with the same words as recorded by Tahawi. Hushaim and Shareek both narrate this hadeeth from Yazeed with the above words as recorded by Ibn Adiyy in his al Kamil (as quoted in al Jawhar al Naqiyy). The same is also reported from Yazeed by Ismaeel bin Zakariyya in Darqutni’s *al Sunan,* by Ismaeel bin Yunus in Baihaqi’s *al Khilafiyyat* as mentioned in *al Jawhar al Naqiyy* and *Mabani al Akhbaar,* by Muhammad bin Abdul Rahman bin Abi Layla in his book as mentioned by Bukhari in his Juz’, and by Hamzah al Zayyat in Tabarani’s *al Awsat* as mentioned in *Mabani al Akhbaar.* These are then at least seven narrators, Sufyan, Hushaim, Shareek, Ismaeel bin Zakariyya, Ismaeel bin Yunus, Ibn Abi Layla and Hamzah al Zayyat, all of whom narrate the above hadeeth with the words ‘and then not raise them again.’ These words are then established and are part of the hadeeth. Furthermore, Yazeed himself is not alone in reporting this hadeeth in this form. He has been followed up in the narration of these words by Isa bin Abdul Rahman and Hakam bin Utaibah as recorded by Bukhari in his Juz’, Abu Dawood, Tahawi, Baihaqi, and by the collectors of *al Mudawwanah al Kubra.*

Allamah Anwar Shah al Kashmiri says:

‘In short, this discussion of the topic from the angle of both hadeeth and historical data concludes that it is correct to use the hadeeth of Baraa (bin Azib) ‏ as evidence with the authentic additional wording (of ‘he would not raise them again’).’

4. Aswad says, ‘I prayed salah with Umar bin al Khattab and he did not raise his hands during any part of salah except in the beginning.’ Abdul Malik (one of the narrators) says, ‘I also observed Sh’ai, Ibrahim, and Ishaq not raising their hands except when beginning their salah.’

5. Aasim bin Kulaib narrates from his father that Sayyiduna Ali ‏ would raise his hands at the first
takbeer of salah. He would not raise them again after this. 369

6. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud ☉ reports that the Prophet ☉ would raise his hands at the time of the first takbeer and not raise them again. 370

7. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas‘ud ☉ says, ‘I prayed behind the Prophet ☉, Abu Bakr, and Umar ☉ and they did not raise their hands except when beginning salah.’ 371

8. Abu Bakr bin Ayyash says, ‘I have not seen a single fageeh do it; raise his hands at any time other than the first takbeer.’ 372

Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad al Uthmani says:

‘This shows that the raising of the hands when bowing into ruk‘u and when rising from it was most likely not practised widely during the time of the Tabi‘an, for Abu Bakr bin Ayyash was one of the foremost Tab‘i Tabieen. Malik who was also a prominent Tab‘i

369 Imam Muhammad in his al Muwatta 109, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2442, Tahawi 1/225 and Baihaqi 2535. Hafidh Zailace says 1406 that it is a saheeh hadith. Hafidh bin Hajar says in al Dirayah 1/113 that its narrators are authentic and Hafidh Badr al Deen Aini says in Undat al Qari as quoted by Imam Nimawi 404, The isnad of Aasim bin Kulab’s hadith is saheeh according to the conditions of Muslim.

370 Tahawi 1/224 with two different isnads. Muhadith Dhafar Ahmad al Uthmani has discussed each narrator of both these sanads and proven that they are all authentic (3/71).

371 Abu Ya‘laa 5039, Daruqutni 1120, and Baihaqi 2534. Ibn al Turkumani says that this is a jayyid (very good) supporting narration. The hadith contains Muhammad bin Jabir bin Sayyar who has been declared weak by some, reliable by others. Muhadith Dhafar Ahmad al Uthmani discusses his position at length before concluding that his hadith is at least hasan (3/67).

372 Tahawi 1/228, Muhadith Dhafar Ahmad al Uthmani says (827), ‘its narrators are those of Bukhari except Ibn Abi Dawood and he is thiqah (authentic).’ Muhadith Yusuf Binoni says (2/494) that its sanad is strong. Abu Bakr bin Ayyash is one of the narrators of Bukhari and one of the teachers of Sulayan al Thawri, Ibn al Mubarak and Imam Ahmad.

Tabee says as is recorded in al Mudawwanah al Kubra “I do not know of raising the hands in any takbeer of salah, neither whilst raising or bowing except in the beginning when he should raise his hands slightly.” 373 Ibn al Qasim also says, “Raising the hands was weak in the view of Malik except in the beginning of salah.” This also show that the raising of the hands was generally not practised during that time. 374

9. Abbad the son of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin al Zubair ☉ relates that when starting salah the Prophet ☉ would raise his hands in the beginning and not raise them again at any time until he completed his prayer. 375

10. Ibrahim al Nakhai relates that, ‘Abdullah bin Mas‘ud ☉ would not raise his hands in any part of salah except in the beginning.’ 376

11. Abu Ishaq says, ‘The companions of both Abdullah bin Mas‘ud and Ali ☉ would not raise their hands except in the beginning of salah. Wakee’ adds, ‘And they would not raise them again.’ 377

373 al Mudawwanah al Kubra 1/165.
374 Fikar al Sunan 3/76-91.
375 Baihaqi in his al Khilafiyay as quoted by Hafidh Zailace 1721. Allamah Anwar Shah al Kashmiri says as quoted by Muhadith Yusuf Binoni 2/496, ‘I have researched the narrators of its isnad and the conclusion of the research was that it is saheeh.’ He also added, ‘It is a jayyid (very good) marjul hadith.’
376 Abdul Razzaq 2533-2535, Ibn Abi Shaibah 2443 and Tahawi 1/227. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is jayyid (very good) and mustawad.
377 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2446. Ibn al Turkumani says 2/115 that this is a great saheeh sanad.
12. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar narrates that the Prophet would raise his hands when beginning salah and then not raise them again.

13. Mujahid says, ‘I prayed salah behind Ibn Umar and he would not raise his hands in salah except at the time of the first takbeer.’

14. Abdul Aziz bin Hakeem says, ‘I saw Ibn Umar raise his hands to the level of his ears at the time of the first takbeer in the beginning of salah, and he did not raise them apart from this.’

The above ahadeeth also show that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar’s own practice was no different to that of the senior companions such as Sayyiduna Abu Bakr, Sayyiduna Ali, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud and his own father Sayyiduna Umar. They would not raise their hands except in the beginning of salah. However, Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar (in some narrations - not all, as can be seen above) differs with Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud in his report about the practice of the Prophet. He relates that the Messenger of Allah would raise his hands at times other than the first takbeer whereas Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud reports that he would only raise them in the beginning. In such an instance whose narration is to be given preference? The answer can be gained from the following report.

14. Hafidh Raja bin al Murji relates that Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal, Yahya bin Maen and Ali bin al

15. Jabir bin Samurah says, ‘The Prophet came out to us saying, ‘Why is it that I see you raising your hands as though they are the tails of obstinate horses? Remain calm in salah.’

There is another hadeeth quoted by Imam Muslim on the authority of the same companion, Sayyiduna Jabir bin Samurah, which states, ‘When we prayed salah with the Prophet we would say as Salamu alaikum wa rahmatullah, as Salamu alaikum wa rahmatullah. He (the narrator) also indicated with his hands. The Prophet said, “Why are you motioning with your hands as though they are the tails of obstinate horses?”

Some people state this second hadeeth as an explanation to the first and claim that both pertain to the salah and not generally to the raising of the hands during salah. However, as many ulama, including Hafidh Jamal al Deen Zailae, have explained, it is quite possible that the above two hadeeth are unrelated and both refer to two separate incidents. Pronouncing the salam and signalling the greeting with one’s hands indicates the end of prayer. It cannot be said to such a person: remain calm ‘in salah’. Even if we were to assume that the above two hadeeth were connected and both referred to one and the same incident, the rule of ‘calmness in salah’ is more

378 Baihaqi in al Khilafiyat as quoted by Hafidh Zailae 1720. Muhaddith Yusuf al Binnoury 249 quoting Qadhi Abid Sindhi who says in al Mawdhib al Lata’efah, ‘In my view this hadeeth is undoubtedly saheeh.’ He also quotes 2496 Allamah Anwar Shah al Kashfiri as saying, ‘The anad mentioned in the takbeer (Nasib al Ra’yah by Hafidh Zailae) is saheeh.


380 Imam Muhammad in al Mawwatta 108.

381 Daruqutni 538, Hakim 482 and Baihaqi 648.

382 Ahmad 20450 & 20522, Muslim 430, Abu Dawood 1000 and Nasai 1184.

383 For details of his life, learning and works see the biographies section at the end of the book.
pertain to the raising of the hands before and after the *ruk'u* and *sajdah*, rather than at the time of *salam* which is the moment of ending the prayer and in a way not even part of *salah*. Another reason for considering the two to be separate *hadeeth* is that in the first *hadeeth* the *Sahabah* were engaged in *salah* and the Prophet ﷺ entered the *masjid* and said the above words. The second *hadeeth* on the other hand shows that they were praying with the Prophet ﷺ and he corrected them after completing the congregational *salah*.

16. Husain bin Abdul Rahman relates, ‘Amr bin Murrah and I visited Ibrahim al Nakhai. Amr said, “Alqamah bin Wail al Hadhrami narrated to me from his father that he prayed *salah* with the Prophet ﷺ. He saw him raise his hands when he said the *takbeer*, when he bowed into *ruk'u* and when he rose therefrom.” Ibrahim replied, “I do not know. He may possibly not have seen the Prophet ﷺ pray except on that day and thus remembered this of him. (Otherwise) did Ibn Mas’ud and his companions not remember this of him? I have not heard it from any one of them. They would only raise their hands in the beginning of *salah* when saying the *takbeer.*”

17. Suyyân bin Uyyaenah reports that Imam Abu Hanifah and Imam Awzaeef met and came together in Makkah. Imam Awzaeef asked, ‘What is it with you - and in one narration, with you people of Iraq, - that you do not raise your hands in *salah* at the time of bowing into *ruk'u* and rising therefrom?’ Imam Abu Hanifah replied, ‘Because nothing authentic has been established about it from the Prophet ﷺ.’ Imam Awzaeef remarked, ‘How can

nothing authentic be established when Zuhri narrated to me from Salim from his father (Abdullah bin Umar) that the Prophet ﷺ would raise his hands when beginning *salah*, and at the time of bowing into *ruk'u* and rising therefrom?’ Imam Abu Hanifah narrated in reply, ‘Hammad related to me from Ibrahim from Alqamah and Aswad from Ibn Mas’ud that the Prophet ﷺ would not raise his hands except in the beginning of *salah*. He would not raise them again.’ Imam Awzaeef retorted, ‘I narrate to you from Zuhri from Salim from his father, and you say Hammad narrated to me from Ibrahim?’ Imam Abu Hanifah said, ‘Hammad was a greater *fuqeeh* than Zuhri and Ibrahim was a greater *fuqeeh* than Salim. Alqamah was no less a jurist than Abdullah bin Umar although Ibn Umar enjoyed *sahabah* (the company of the Prophet ﷺ) and that is a noble virtue. Aswad was also of great merit and Abdullah (Ibn Mas’ud) was Abdullah. Upon these words of Imam Abu Hanifah Imam Awzaeef became silent.

Imam Nimawi says,

‘The *Sahabah* and those who came after them differed in this regard. As for the four caliphs, the raising of the hands has not been proven from them except in the first *takbeer* of *tahreemah*. And Allah knows best.’

**Answers to the ahadeeth of raising the hands.**

1. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar relates that the Prophet ﷺ would raise his hands when he would begin *salah*, when bowing into *ruk'u* and when raising his head from *ruk'u*. He would not raise

---

384 Imam Abu Hanifah as recorded in *Jami’ al Masneeh* 1/353, and Imam Muhammad in his *al Muwatta* 108 of which Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani says (825) that its narrators are authentic. Also reported by Tahawi 1/224, Daruqufni 1108 and Baihaqi 2536.

385 Khawarzami in *Jami’ al Masneeh* 1/352 and Hafidh Ibn al Humam 1/319, as well as many others.

386 *al T’aleeq al Hasan* p215.
his hands in sujud. This remained the method of his prayer till he met Allah.  

Imam Nimawi says that this hadith is not just weak but actually fabricated. He writes:

'It is extremely strange that certain authors have included this narration in their works even though some of its narrators are those who have been accused of fabricating hadith.

Dhahabi says in Mizan that Abdul Rahman bin Qaraish bin Khuzaimah al Harawi was a resident of Baghdad and he was accused by al Sulaimani of fabricating hadith.

He also says in the biography of Ismat bin Muhammad al Ansari: “Abu Hatim said ‘He is not strong.’; Yahya said that he is a great liar who fabricates hadith. Uqali said that he relates forged narrations even from authentic narrators. Daruqutni and others have said that he is matrook.’

Imam Nimawi adds that some authors have claimed that the ten companions who were promised Jannah have all related similar reports that this remained the method of the Prophet’s prayer 4 till he met his Lord.

He says quoting from Kashf al Rayn of Allamah Hashim Sindhi:

‘There is not one authentic report related to this let alone reports from the ten who were promised Jannah. Yes, there is one narration to this end of Abdullah bin Umar  recorded by Baihaqi (quoted above) but its sanad is not saheeh, and whoever claims its authenticity or the authenticity of other similar reports then the burden of proof lies upon him.’

Some people have also claimed that the hadith of raising the hands is mutawatir as it is narrated from some fifty Sahabah 5. It should be understood well here that these 50 or so narrations are related to the raising the hands in the beginning of salah, not about before ruk’u and after ruk’u. Even Shawkani says in Nawl al Awzaar,

‘Hafidh Iraqi has compiled a list of the Sahabah who have narrated the hadith of raising the hands in the beginning of salah. They number fifty Sahabah.’

The raising of the hands has been mentioned for a number of different occasions of salah in the ahadeeth. Of these, the mujahid ulama are unanimous in declaring the desirability of raising the hands at the beginning of salah with the takbeer al tahreemah. They are also agreed that it is not desirable to raise the hands on three occasions of salah: between the two sajdahs, after two rak’at (at the beginning of the third rak’ah), and together with every takbeer in every rise and descent of salah. This is their view, even though there are clear established ahadeeth for all of these occasions, some of which are quoted below. The ulama only differ about the raising of the hands before and after ruk’u. Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Malik, Sufyan al Thawri, Ibrahim al Nakhai, Sh’abi, Alqamah, and the people of Kufah say it is not desirable, whilst Imam Shafiiee and Imam Ahmad say it is. Observe the following ahadeeth about raising the hands for many different places in salah.

**Ahadeeth on raising the hands when falling down for sujud.**

There is also a saheeh hadith in Nasai and Ahmad on the authority of Sayyiduna Malik bin al Huwayrith 6 (quoted below) that describes the raising of the hands at the time of falling down into sajdah. (This means raising the hands twice after ruk’u.) Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiiri says, ‘In my opinion, this practice has a basis in the ahadeeth but no one has paid attention to it. Ibn Rushd, however, has mentioned this in his Qawaid in a manner that suggests that it was the practice of certain scholars.’

1. Sayyiduna Malik bin al Huwayrith 6 reports that he saw the Prophet 8 raise his hands in his salah until he brought them in line with the top of his ears, when he bowed into ruk’u, when he raised his head

---

387 Baihaqi as quoted by Hafidh Zailae 1/409.
388 al Taleeq al Hasan 394.
389 Nawl al Awzaar 2/183.
from *ruk'u*, when he fell down into *sujud*, and when he raised his head from *sujud*.

Imam Nimawi says:

"Hafidh Ibn Hajar writes in *Fath al Bari*, "The most authentic hadeeth that I have come across relating to raising the hands at the time of falling into *sujud* is that recorded by Nasai." After quoting the above hadeeth with its chain of narration, he adds, "Muslim has also recorded the latter part of the *hadeeth* with this very chain of narration as we have mentioned in the beginning of the previous chapter. It should also be known that Saeed is not alone in reporting this narration in this manner, for Hammam has followed him up in reporting it this way from Qatada as recorded by Abu Awanah in his *Saheeh*." 

Imam Nimawi adds,

"Actually, many of those reporting from Qatada have followed him up on this: Hammad in the narration recorded by Ahmad bin Hanbal and Abu Awanah; and Sh'ubah. Muadh and Hisham in the narration recorded by Nasai. There is no doubt, therefore, that the addition of "raising the hands for *sujud*" is authentic and correctly preserved, and it is not *sheadh* as some have claimed."

2. Sayyiduna Anas says that the *Prophet* would raise his hands when bowing down into ruku and falling into *sujud*.

3. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar says that the *Prophet* would raise his hands when saying the *takbeer* for *ruk'u* and at the time of saying the *takbeer* when falling into *sujud*.

Imam Nimawi says:

"This narration apparently contradicts that reported by Bukhari on the authority of Abdullah bin Umar that the Prophet would not raise his hands when prostrating or when raising his head from *sajdah*. It is possible, however, to reconcile the two by saying that the words "when prostrating" in the narration of Bukhari mean "when falling into the second prostration." This explanation is supported by Ibn Umar's other narration in which he says, "The Prophet would not raise his hands between the two *sajdahs*."

4. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah says, 'I saw the Prophet *raise his hands close to his shoulders, at the time of beginning *salat*, when bowing into *ruk'u* and when falling into *sujud*.'

Ahadeeth on raising the hands between the two *sajdahs*.

Raising the hands between the two *sajdah's* is verified in the *sunnah* as described in the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Malik bin al Huwairith narrated by Nasai in his *Sunan* from Saeed bin Abi Arubah from Qatada from Nasr bin Aasim. (Saeed is not alone in narrating this hadeeth in this manner from Qatada for he has been followed up by Hammam who reported the same from Qatada as recorded by Abu Awanah in his *Saheeh*.) It is also mentioned in the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas narrated by Nasai, in the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr related by Abu Dawood, and in the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrated by Ibn Majah.

Imam Nimawi says:

---

390 Ahmad 15173, 15177 & 20014, and Nasai 1085 & 1143. Imam Nimawi says that its *isnad* is *saheeh* (396).

391 *al T'aleeq al Hasan* 396.

392 Abu Ya'laa 6/399, no.3752. Imam Nimawi says that its *isnad* is *saheeh* (397). Hafidh Haithami says 2/101 that its narrators are those of Saheeh.

393 Tabarani in *al M'ujam al Awsat* as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 1/102. He adds that its *isnad* is *saheeh*.

394 *al T'aleeq al Hasan* p204.

395 Ahmad 6128 and Ibn Majah 860.
Abu Bakr bin Abi Shaibah has recorded a tradition in his Musannaf (whose isnad needs to be checked) on the authority of Ashthah that Hasan al Basri and Ibn Seereen both used to raise their hands between the two sajdahs. He has also recorded another narration from Ayyub whose isnad is saheeh that he said, “I saw Nafi’ and Tawoos raise their hands between the two sajdahs.” Bukhari writes in his Juz Raf al Yadayn, “Wakee said, ‘I have seen Hasan, Mujahid, Ataa, Tawoos, Qais bin Sa’d and Hasan bin Muslim raise their hands when bowing for ruk’u and when falling into sajdah.” Abdul Rahman bin Mahdi said that this is from Sunnah, and Ikrhim bin Ammar reports, “I have seen Qasim, Tawoos, Makhool, Abdullah bin Dinar, and Salim all raise their hands when facing the qiblah, and at the time of ruk’u and sujud.”  

1. Sayyiduna Malik bin al Huwayrith reports that he saw the Prophet raise his hands in his salah until he brought them in line with the top of his ears, when he bowed into ruk’u, when he raised his head from ruk’u, when he fell down into sujud, and when he raised his head from sujud.  

2. Abu Sahl al Azadee says, “Abdullah bin Tawoos prayed salah next to me in Masjid al Khaif in Mina. When he would raise his head from the first sajdah he would raise his hands towards his face. I found this strange so I remarked to Wuhaib bin Khalid that he is doing something which I have seen no one do. Wuhaib said to him, ‘You are doing something which we have seen no one do.’ Abdullah replied, ‘I saw my father do it, and he said I saw Abdullah bin Abbas do it, and Abdullah bin Abbas said I saw the Prophet do it.”  

3. Yahya bin Abu Ishaq reports, “I saw Anas bin Malik raise his hands between the two sajdahs.”  

4. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah says, “I saw the Prophet raise his hands close to his shoulders, at the time of beginning salah, when bowing into ruk’u and when falling into sujud.”  

Imam Nimawi says:  

‘Those who claim that there is nothing authentic established in the ahadeeth about raising the hands for sajdah are in error, and those who claim that raising the hands between the two sajdahs is abrogated, their evidence for abrogation is no different from those who say that the hands should not be raised at all except in the beginning of salah.”  

Ahadeeth on raising the hands at the beginning of every rak’ah.  

1. Sayyiduna Ali reports that when the Prophet would stand in fardh prayer he would say the takbeer and raise his hands till his shoulders. He would do the same when he would complete his recitation and bow into ruk’u, and the same when he would raise his head from ruk’u. He would not raise his hands at all when seated in salah. When he would stand up after the two sajdahs he would raise his hands in a similar manner and say the takbeer.  

Some have offered the explanation that this hadeeth refers to raising the hands after the two raku’aat meaning at the beginning of the

396 al T’aleeq al Hasan p204.  
397 Ahmad 15173, 15177 & 20014, and Nasai 1085 & 1143. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (396).  
398 Abu Dawood 740 and Nasai 1146.  
400 Ahmad 6128 and Ibn Majah 860.  
401 al T’aleeq al Hasan p205.  
402 Ahmad 719, Ibn Majah 864 and Abu Dawood 744.
third rak'ah. This is difficult to accept because of the clear meaning of ‘two sajdahs’. Furthermore, the following narrations also speak of raising the hands at the beginning of every rak’ah.

2. Maimoon al Makki relates that he observed Abdullah bin al Zubair who led them in salah. He would signal with his palms when standing for prayer, when bowing into ruk'u, when falling into sajdah, and when rising for qiyaam (standing in the rak’ah). Maimoon adds, ‘I went to Ibn Abbas and said to him, ‘I have seen Ibn al Zubair pray a form of salah that I have not seen anyone pray.’ I described the signalling action to him. He replied, ‘If you wish to see the salah of the Prophet then follow the salah of Abdullah bin al Zubair.’”

3. Abdul Jabbar bin Wail bin Hujr says, ‘I was a child. I could not understand my father’s salah. Wail bin Alqamah narrated to me from my father Wail bin Hujr that he said, “I prayed with the Prophet. When he would say the takbeer he would raise his hands, wrap himself in his cloak, grasp his left hand with his right and place them beneath his cloak. When he wished to bow down into ruk'u he would take out his hands from his cloak and raise them, and when he rose from ruk'u he would raise them. He would then fall down into sajdah and place his noble face between his palms. When he raised his head from the sujud he would also raise his hands. This would be so until he completed his salah.”’ Muhammad (one of the narrators) says, ‘I mentioned this to Hasan bin Abi al Hasan. He replied, ‘This is the salah of the

Prophet ﷺ. Whoever prays it prays it and whoever leaves it leaves it.”

4. Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ says, ‘When the Prophet ﷺ would stand for salah he would raise his hands till his shoulders. He would then say the takbeer (with the hands raised) and then bow down into ruk'u. When he raised his back he would raise them again till his shoulders and then say ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’. He would not raise his hands at the time of sujud, but he would raise them at the time of each takbeer before ruk'u until he completed his salah.’

Ibn al Qattan says, “The raising of the hands at the beginning of the second rak’ah is established by the hadeeth of Ibn Abbas and Malik bin al Huwayrith.”

**Ahadeeth on raising the hands after standing up from two rak’aat.**

The raising of the hands after the two rak’aat at the beginning of the third rak’ah is also established in the sunnah as found in the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Ibn Umar recorded by Bukhari. Hafidh bin Hajar has listed a number of strong supporting narrations for the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Ibn Umar and declared preference for this practice.

1. Nafi reports that when Ibn Umar ﷺ would begin salah, he would say the takbeer and raise his hands. He would also raise his hands when bowing for ruk'u, when saying ‘Sami Allahu li man Hamidah’, and when standing after two rak’aat. Ibn Umar ﷺ would attribute this to the Prophet ﷺ.

---

403 Ahmad 2308 and Abu Dawood 739.
404 Abu Dawood 723.
405 Abu Dawood 722.
406 Bukhari 706.
The same is also mentioned in the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Saidee as recorded by Tirmidhi, Abu Dawood and Ibn Majah. Ibn Khuzaimah says, 'It is sunnah, even though Shafii may not have mentioned it, because the isnad is saheeh.'

Ahadeeth on raising the hands with every takbeer in salah.

Ibn al Qayyim writes in Badai' al Fawa'id:

'Athram narrates that Imam Ahmad was asked about the raising of the hands. He replied, 'In every descent and rising.' Athram also said, 'I saw Abu Abdullah (Imam Ahmad) raise his hands in every descent and rising of salah.'

1. Sayyiduna Jabir relates as part of a longer hadeeth that the Prophet would raise his hands with every takbeer in salah.

2. Sayyiduna Umair bin Habeeb narrates that the Prophet would raise his hands with every takbeer in fardh salah.

3. Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas reports that the Prophet would raise his hands at the time of each takbeer.

4. Qatadah reports that he said to Sayyiduna Anas bin Malik, 'Show us the salah of Rasoolullah.' He stood up and prayed. He would raise his hands with every takbeer.

Raising the hands in every takbeer of rising and descending has been quoted from a few Sahaba such as Sayyiduna Ibn Umar, Sayyiduna Abu Musa, Sayyiduna Abu Saeed al Khudri, Sayyiduna Abu al Dardaa, Sayyiduna Anas, Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas, and Sayyiduna Jabir.

As mentioned above, the raising of the hands has been mentioned for all kinds of different places in salah. However, the overwhelming majority, if not all, of the ummah has not acted upon most of them. Explaining this, Shaikh ul Hadeeth Moulana Muhammad Zakariyya writes in his Awjaz al Masalik:

'You may have realised from the aforementioned narrations and verdicts of the ulama that the raising of the hands has been established in numerous places by authentic narrations. Many saheeh ahadeeth have been reported in this regard, and some of them have been adopted by some jurists. Despite this, however, the majority have only taken the narrations of the three places mentioned earlier.

In fact, Abu Hamid has quoted the consensus of the ulama on the non-permissibility of raising the hands in any place other than these three. This is disputed, though, as stated by Hafidh Ibn Hajar in Fath al Bari.

It is impossible to think that, despite the authentic narrations regarding them, the ulama have not adopted the raising of the hands in places other than the three without any good cause; especially raising the hands after tashahhuda with its many reports. Similarly raising the hands after the two prostrations, and for sujud despite the authenticity of its narration. Khattabi has quoted the consensus of the ulama against it, i.e., whilst descending for sujud), and even Shawkani was compelled to explain it away despite his literalism. Similar is the case with raising the hands between the two prostrations together with the other places of salah.

It cannot be denied, therefore, that it was something else which led the majority and the four Imams to not act upon these authentic narrations that are explicit in their meaning. This is upright evidence to show that, despite the presence of authentic reports about the

---

407 Ibn Majah 1061, Abu Dawood 730 and Tirmidhi 304. Tirmidhi says that the hadeeth is hasan saheeh.
408 Badai' al Fawa'id 3/72.
409 Ahmad 1391.9.
410 Ibn Majah 861.
411 Ibn Majah 865.
412 Tabarani in al M'sjam al Awsat as quoted by Hafidh Haithami 2/102.
413 i.e., the raising of the hands in the beginning of salah, before ruk'u and after ruk'u.
414 After the first tashahhud in salah at the beginning of the third ruk'ah.
415 At the beginning of each ruk'ah.
416 After having raised the hands for rising from the ruk'u.
raising of the hands in these places, some ulama, for any one of many
reasons, gave preference to not raising the hands.

Thus, if they have explained away the reports in this regard, or
given preference to those of not raising the hands over those of raising
them, then the Hanafi and Maliki ulama have similarly given
preference to the narrations of not raising the hands over those of
raising them. Likewise, in their view, the ahadeeth of raising the
hands only once take precedence just as the narrations of raising the
hands in three places take precedence according to others. Moreover,
as those who say that the hands should be raised have not embraced
the narrations of raising the hands in more than three places because
of discrepancies in the reports or because of any one of the many
reasons of preferring one report over another, those who say that the
hands should not be raised except once have, in an equal manner and
based on the same reasons, not adopted those narrations that mention
raising the hands more than once. Whatever is your answer for not
acting upon these ahadeeth that are authentic in your view will also
serve as our answer.  

Even the narrations of a single hadeeth from the individual
Sahabah who have related something in this regard differ.
Probably the most famous and the most quoted hadeeth about the
raising of the hands is that of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar found
in most collections of hadeeth. An analysis of this hadeeth, which is
representative of the other narrations on the subject, will reveal its
many divergent forms and demonstrate how difficult it is to determine
one and prefer it over another, thus leading many ulama of this
ummah to adopt the practice of not raising their hands at all except in
the beginning of salah.

• There are reports that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar himself did
not raise his hands as has been quoted with a saheeh isnad earlier.

• This hadeeth was not acted upon by many of the people of
Madinah (the city of Abdullah bin Umar) during the time of
Imam Malik and for this reason Imam Malik (who based most if
not all of his decisions on the teachings, practice and narrations of
Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar and the people of Madinah) did not adopt it.

• The same one hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar has
been related in at least six different forms by its narrators. The
raising of the hands in this hadeeth has been reported in the
following variant ways:

1. In only one place of salah, at the time of the first takbeer as
reported from Imam Malik in al Mudawwanah al Kubra.

2. In two places only: the beginning of salah and when bowing
down into ruk' u.

3. In two places only: the beginning of salah and when rising
from ruk' u.

4. In three places: the beginning of salah, before ruk' u and after
ruk' u.

5. In four places: the above three and also at the beginning of the
fourth ruk' ah.

6. In every rise and descent of salah, including every ruk' u,
sujud, standing and sitting, and also between the two sujud.

419 al Mudawwanah al Kubra 1/166.
420 Tahawi in Sharh Mushkil al Aathaar 5832.
421 Malik 165 & 169.
422 Bukhari 702.
423 Bukhari 705.
424 Tahawi in Sharh Mushkil al Aathaar 5831.

417 Awjuz al Masalik 2/47.
418 Hadeeth no. 13 of this Chapter.
The narrators have also differed in their *raf* and *waqf* of this *hadeeth* of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ. Layth bin Sa’d, Ibn Jurayj, and Malik all narrate it from Nafi’ who ascribes it only to Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ in a *mawqif* form. Abdul A’alaa narrates it from Ubaidullah from Nafi’ in a *marfu’* form, however Ubaidullah’s two other students Abdul Wahhab al Thaqafi and Mu’tamir both narrate it from him from Nafi’ in a *mawqif* form, ascribing it to Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ and not the Prophet ﷺ. Salim and Nafi’ who both directly relate the *hadeeth* from Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ also differ in narrating it as a *marfu’* or *mawqif* *hadeeth*.

As explained earlier, the difference in the ascription of this *hadeeth* to either the practice of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ or directly to the Prophet ﷺ, and the difference in its wording has led many including the Hanafi and Maliki *ulama* to not act on it at all, just as Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal did not adopt the practice of raising the hands in the beginning of the third rak’ah and in between the two prostrations.

Ibn Raslan says,

‘Imam Ahmad was asked, “Should one raise the hands after standing up in the third rak’ah and between the two *sajdahs*?” He replied, “I do not follow the *hadeeth* of Salim from his father (Ibn Umar ﷺ), nor the *hadeeth* of Walil bin Hujr ﷺ because its wording differs.’

The Position of the *ulama*.

The practice of raising the hands in prayer has been quoted from a number of *Sahabah* ﷺ. However, it is significant to note that the opposite practice of not raising the hands has also been reported from every one of these companions with the exception of Abdullah bin Mas’ud ﷺ from whom there is only one quoted view and practice: that of not raising the hands except in the beginning.

During the time of the *Sahabah*, *Tabi’in* and *Tabi’i Tabieen* both practices were adopted by the people of all cities with the exception of Kufah, where virtually all the inhabitants did not raise their hands. It appears, that even in Madinah, the common custom was not to raise the hands because Imam Malik based his view on their practice.

**Imam Malik**

Imam Malik is of the view that it is desirable to raise the hands only in the beginning of *salah*. This is Ibn al Qasim’s narration from Imam Malik and is the chosen practice of the Maliki scholars. Imam Malik says, ‘I do not know of raising the hands in any *takbeer* of *salah*, neither whilst rising or bowing except in the beginning when he should raise his hands slightly.’

Imam Nawawi writes in the commentary of Saheeh Muslim, ‘Imam Abu Hanifah, his companions and a group of the people of Kufah say that it is not desirable to raise the hands in *salah* other than the time of the first *takbeer*. This is also the most famous narration of Imam Malik.’ Ibn al Qasim also says, ‘Raising the hands was weak in the view of Malik except in the beginning of *salah*.’

Hafidh Ibn Hajar al Asqalani has categorically stated that the basis of rulings and *fatawa* according to the Maliki *ulama* is not what Imam Malik has mentioned in his *al Muwatta* but what Ibn al Qasim narrates from Imam Malik, regardless of whether this agrees with that contained in *al Muwatta* or not. Hafidh also says that a certain scholar from the *Maghrib* has compiled a book listing those *masaail* in which the Malikis have acted contrary to what has been narrated in *al Muwatta*, such as raising the hands when bowing into rak’u and rising therefrom.

Not raising the hands except in the beginning of *salah* was the known practice of Sayyiduna Abu Bakr, Sayyiduna Umar, Sayyiduna Ali and Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud as well as many others from

---

425 Awjaz al Masilik 2/55.
426 al Mudawwanah al Kubra 1/165.
427 al Mudawwanah al Kubra 1/165.
428 Hafidh Ibn Hajar in his Introduction to Ta’jeel al Manfaah, p4.
Chapter 7

Not fasting the hands after ruk'u

Leaving the hands hanging at the side after ruk'u has always been the practice of the entire ummah. The method of fasting the hands at this time as adopted by certain people has not been mentioned in any hadeeth, nor has it been quoted as the practice of any of the earlier generation of Sahabah, Tabi'un and Tab' Tabileen. If, as some have claimed today, the fasting of the hands after ruk'u can be immediately understood from a number of saheeh ahadeeth, then surely this would never have escaped the ulama of the past. We observe, however, that none of the Muhaddithun and scholars of the different madhahib of fiqh have mentioned it as being part of salah or even a desirable act, let alone it being a sunnah.

Some argue that since fasting the hands is sunnah during qiyam before the ruk'u, it must be the same for the period of standing after ruk'u. This, however, is an incorrect analogy because the fasting of the hands is for the duration of the qiyam which forms an integral part of salah and in which a person normally recites the Quran. The period of standing after ruk'u and before sajdah is not even referred to as qiyam but gawmah, l'itteelaal, 'al qiyam ba'd al ruk'u', or 'al raf ba'd al ruk'u'. A close study of the ahadeeth of salah will reveal that when the word qiyam is mentioned by itself it always refers to the qiyam before ruk'u, but when the standing after ruk'u and before sajdah is mentioned it is never described as the qiyam but as l'itteelaal or 'the raising of the head after ruk'u or something similar. Even if the word qiyam or something of the same root is used it is always done so in conjunction with another word or few words to show that it refers to the standing after ruk'u and not to that before it.

None of the Sahabah have ever mentioned the fasting of the hands after ruk'u in their narrations despite being so particular and diligent in their description of the Prophet's prayer, and in turn this

---

429 For the narrations describing the practice of the above Tabi'un see al Musannaf of Ibn Abi Shaibah 2444-2454.
430 See Chapter 6 in Part Three for a detailed discussion of this topic.
has never been quoted from the Sahabah, Tabi'ain or Tab' Tabeen. In fact, it is reported about Sayyiduna Ali ﷺ as part of a longer hadeeth that:

‘When he would stand up for prayer and say the takbeer he would place his right hand on his left wrist. He would remain like this until he bowed down into ruku (unless he scratched himself or straightened his clothes).”  

Some claim that this practice of fastening the hands after ruku’ is based on the following words which are part of a long hadeeth reported by Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Saidee ﷺ and raise your head until the bones return to their joints.  This, however, is an incorrect interpretation of the Prophetic words. This and other similar expressions in the ahadeeth simply mean that one should stand and sit upright after ruku and sajdah and remain motionless for a moment ensuring that the spine is straight by allowing every vertebra to return to its place. The words used in the hadeeth are ‘adhn’ and ‘fuqar’. Adhn simply means bone but fuqar defines this as being the bones of the back, the vertebrae as explained by Hafidh Ibn Hajar in his Fath al Bari and also by Qadhi Iyad in his Mashariq al Anwaar.

Chapter 8

Placing the knees before the hands in sujud.

Placing the knees before the hands when descending for sujud has been the view and practice of the majority of the ummah. Unfortunately some insist that this practice is contrary to the sunnah and that their view of placing the hands before the knees is the only correct and valid method. Here we first present those ahadeeth that have been adopted by the majority of the scholars followed by those narrations that are often quoted as evidence for placing the hands before the knees together with the relevant explanations and answers.

1. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ says, ‘I saw the Prophet ﷺ place his knees (on the ground) before his hands when he would prostrate, and lift up his hands before his knees when rising.’

Imam Khattabi, Imam Tibi, Ibn al Mundhir, and Imam Ibn Sayyid al Naas al Ya’muri have all declared the above hadeeth of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ to be more established and authentic than the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah (quoted below) on the same subject. Ibn al Mundhir says in al Awasat, ‘The hadeeth of Abu Wail ﷺ is more established and it is our view (to place the knees before the hands).’

---

431 Ibn Abi Shaibah 3940 and Baihaqi 2333.
433 Fath al Bari 2/391.
435 Narrated by Imam Abu Hanifah as quoted in Jami’ al Mustaneeed 1/413; Darimi 1320, Ibn Majah 882, Abu Dawood 838, Tirmidhi 268, Nasai 1089, Ibn Khuzaimah 626, and Tahawi 1/255. Also reported by Ibn al Sakan in his Saheeh as quoted by Hafidh bin Hajar in al Talkhees al Habeer 1/254 no. 379. Narrated also by Ibn Hibban 1909, Hakim 822, Baihaqi 2628 and Baghawi 3/133 no 642. Imam Tirmidhi says that the hadeeth is hasan ghireeb and Hakim has declared it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed.
436 As mentioned by Hafidh in Fath al Bari 2/370, and Baghawi in Sharh al Sunnah 3/135.
437 In al Awasat 3/166.
Some have claimed that this hadith is inauthentic and have tried to weaken it on the basis of Shareek, one of its narrators. However, it cannot be accepted because the person narrating from Shareek is Yazeed bin Haroon and he is one of those people who reported hadith from Shareek before his memory suffered. Therefore, his narrations from Shareek are saheeh.

Ibn Hibban says of him in his Kitab al Thiqat:438

'Towards his last he would err in what he narrated; his memory suffered (changed). Therefore, there is no ‘takhlīl’ (confusion) in the reports of those narrators who heard hadith from him in Wasit such as Yazeed bin Haroon and Ishaq al Azraq. The reports of those later narrators who heard hadith from him in Kufah contain many errors.‘

The same hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr also has other chains which do not contain Shareek. For example, Imam Abu Hanifah reporting from Aasim bin Kulaib from his father from Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr,439 Hammam narrating from Shaqeek from Aasim from his father Kulaib as a mursal hadith,440 Hammam reporting from Muhammad bin Juhadah from Abdul Jabbar from his father Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr,441 and Yazeed bin Haroon narrating from Israel bin Yunus from Aasim bin Kulaib from his father from Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr.442 It also has Shawahid (supporting narrations) such as the following ahadeeth:

2. Sayyiduna Anas says, 'I saw the Prophet say the takbeer and place his thumbs close to his ears. He bowed down into ruk’u until each of his joints became motionless, and then descended (into sujud) with the takbeer. His knees went before his hands.' 443

3. Sayyiduna Ubayy bin Ka’b narrates that the Prophet would fall down upon his knees and not lean.444

4. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah reports that the Prophet said, 'When one of you falls down into sajdah he should begin with his knees before his hands and he should not descend in the manner of a camel.' 445

5. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah reports that the Prophet said, 'When one of you falls down into sajdah does he do so in the manner of a camel?' 446

6. Sayyiduna Sa’d bin Abi Waqqas says, 'We used to place our hands before our knees, then we were instructed to place our knees before our hands.' 447

7. Aswad reports that Sayyiduna Umar would fall down on his knees.448

The same has been reported about Sayyiduna Umar by Alqama449 and Ibrahim al Nakhai.450

---

438 Kitab al Thiqat 5/444 No. 8507.
439 Imam Abu Hanifah as quoted in Jami’ al Masaneed 1/413.
440 Baihaqi 2630.
441 Abu Dawood 838 and Baihaqi 2629.
442 Ibn Hibban as quoted by Hafidh Haithami in Mawarid al Dhamaan 487.
443 Hakim 822 and Baihaqi 2632. Hakim classified it saheeh and Dhahabi agreed with him. Hafidh Ibn al Humam quotes Ibn al Jawzi in Fath al Qadeer 1/287 as saying that all of its narrators are authentic.
444 Ibn Hibban as quoted by Hafidh Haithami in Mawarid al Dhamaan 497.
446 Abu Dawood 841, Nasai 1090 and Baihaqi 2636.
447 Ibn Khuzaimah 828 and Baihaqi 2637. Hafidh bin Hajjar says in Fath al Bari 2/371, that two of its narrators are weak.
448 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2704.
449 Tahawi 1/256. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (432).
450 Abdul Razzaq 2955.
8. Sayyiduna Hakeem bin Hizam says, 'I pledged to the Prophet that I would not fall down/descend except whilst being upright.'

9. Abdullah relates that when his father (Muslim bin Yasaar) would prostrate his knees would fall to the ground followed by his hands and then his head.

10. Ibrahim al Nakhai says, 'It has been remembered of Ibn Mas'ud that his knees would fall to the ground before his hands.

11. Mugheerah says, 'I asked Ibrahim (al Nakhai) about a man who places his hands before his knees when falling down into sujud. He replied, 'Only a fool or madman would do it.'

12. Kulaib narrates that when the Prophet would prostrate his knees would fall to the ground before his hands.

13. Nafi' reports that when Sayyiduna Ibn Umar would prostrate he would place his knees before his hands and when rising from the prostration he would raise his hands before his knees.

14. Abu Ishaq relates that when the companions of Sayyiduna Abdullah (bin Masood?) would descend for sujud their knees would fall to the ground before their hands.

15. Mahdi bin Maimoon says, 'I saw Ibn Seereen place his knees before his hands.'

Answers to the ahadeeth of placing the hands before the knees.

1. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that the Prophet said, 'When one of you prostrates he should not kneel as the camel kneels. He should first place his hands and then his knees.'

The extra wording of 'He should first place his hands and then his knees' has only been narrated by Abdul Aziz bin Muhammad al Darawardi. (See his position in hadeeth below.) The others who relate this hadeeth have not included these words in their narrations but have simply reported the following: Abu Hurairah reports that the Prophet said, 'When one of you falls down into sajdah does he do so in the manner of a camel?'

Ibn al Qayyim has also claimed in Zad al Maad that words in the hadeeth of Abu Hurairah have been confused by one of the narrators. The hadeeth should read 'He should first place his knees and then his hands,' but this has been changed to 'He should first place his hands and then his knees.' This confusion of words is also proven by the first part of the hadeeth which says 'He should not kneel as the camel kneels.' It is well known that the camel kneels by placing its forelegs before its hindlegs.

---

451 Ahmad 14888 and Nasai 1084.
452 Abdul Razzaq 2958 and Ibn Abi Shaiba 2706.
453 Tahawi 1/256. Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani says 3/35 that its isnaad is saheeh.
454 Abdul Razzaq 2956 & 2957, Ibn Abi Shaiba 2707, and Tahawi 1/256. Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani says 3/35 that its narrators are authentic.
455 Baithaqi 2630. This hadeeth is mursal.
456 Ibn Abi Shaiba 2705.
457 Ibn Abi Shaiba 2711.
458 Ibn Abi Shaiba 2709.
459 Ahmad 8732, Darimi 1321, Abu Dawood 840 and Nasai 1091.
460 Abu Dawood 841 and Nasai 1090.
461 Zad al Maad 1/226.
Allamah Abdul Hayy Lucknawi also provides extensive details and evidences arguing strongly that the words of the hadith have been mistakenly inverted by one of the narrators.⁴⁶⁵

Imam Nimawi says:

"The fact that the words of the hadith have been confused and mixed around is proven by the narration reported by Abu Bakr bin Abu Shaibah and Imam Tahawi on the authority of Abdullah bin Saeed reporting from his grandfather who reports from Abu Hurairah that the Prophet said:

"When one of you falls into sajdah then he should begin with his knees before his hands, and should not kneel like the kneeling of the (male) camel."

However, Abdullah bin Saeed has been declared dhaaeef by a group of scholars. Allamah Ameer al Yamani has also claimed in his Subul al Salam, commentary of Bulugh al Maraam, that the words of this hadith of Abu Hurairah have been confused and mixed around, and so this hadith should be understood in the light of Wail bin Hujr's narration (quoted later).⁴⁶⁶ Abdus Salaam Ibn Taymiyyah quotes Khattabi in al Muniqa as saying that the hadith of Wail bin Hujr is more established than the hadith of Abu Hurairah.⁴⁶⁷

2. Sayyiduna Ibn Umar reports that when the Prophet would fall into sajdah he would place his hands before his knees.⁴⁶⁸

Imam Nimawi says:

"This is a m'aloof hadith (containing defects). Daruqutni has marked its defect in the fact that Abdul Aziz bin Muhammad al Darawardi is alone in narrating this report from Ubaidullah. Baihaqi says, "Abdul Aziz has narrated it in this manner and I do not think it (ascribing this action to the Prophet) anything but a mistake."

If someone claims as Shawkari has in Nail al Awaar that there is no harm in Abdul Aziz being alone in narrating this report because Muslim has recorded his hadith in his Sahheeh, and Bukhari has also recorded his hadith in conjunction with Abdul Aziz bin Abi Hazim, then it will be said that many scholars have declared him layyin (weak). Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal says, "When he narrates by heart he makes mistakes, he is (then) nothing. However, when he narrates from his book then yes... (his hadith is acceptable) When he narrates he produces baseless things." Abu Hatim says, "He cannot be quoted in evidence." Abu Zur'ah says that he has a bad memory. Hafidi says in Tajreeb, "Sadareq but he would relate hadith from the books of others and thus err." Nasai says that his hadith reported from Ubaidullah al Umri is munkar.

I (Imam Nimawi) say that this very hadith under discussion is also reported from Ubaidullah al Umri through Darawardi. The hadith as preserved by the huffadh is mawqif (only ascribed to the action of a companion). Bukhari has also reported it as a mawqif hadith. Al Darawardi is alone in reporting this narration as a marfu hadith (ascribed to the Prophet) and he is not followed up by anyone, therefore he cannot be quoted in evidence even though he may be a narrator of Muslim.⁴⁶⁹

Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani writes,

"Even if we were to assume the authenticity of this (placing the hands before the knees), some scholars have claimed that it is abrogated. Ibn al Mundhir says, 'Some of our scholars have said that the placing of the hands before the knees is abrogated.' (Ibn Khuzaimah has also claimed that it is abrogated.)"⁴⁶⁷

Imam Tahawi says in Sharh Maani al Aathaar that there are differing reports from Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah but Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr narrates only one thing, therefore his hadith will be preferred over that of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah.⁴⁶⁸

Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri has another unique explanation to the apparent difference in the two hadith. He says that the placing of

⁴⁶⁵ Dhafer al Amoani p405.
⁴⁶⁶ Ibn Abi Shaibah 2702, Tahawi 1/255.
⁴⁶⁷ al T'aleeq al Hasan 429.
⁴⁶⁸ Ibn Khuzaimah 627, Tahawi 1/254, Daruqutni 1288 and Hakim. Hakim declared it saheee and Dhahabi agreed.

⁴⁶⁹ al T'aleeq al Hasan 430.
⁴⁷⁰ I'ilaq al Sunan 3/36.
the hands before the knees is in respect of those who are ill, old or weak. It has been prohibited for them in the hadith of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ that they should fall to the ground in the manner of a camel, though they may still place their hands before their knees. This is because a camel sinks to the ground in a way that leaves its posterior incongruously raised while the front part of its body is close to the ground. So those who need to place their hands on the ground for support before their knees may do so but they should avoid this undesirable posture of a camel falling to the ground. The discouragement in the hadith, therefore, is not for placing the hands before the knees but for this posture of a camel falling to the ground in which the rear is raised whilst the front part of the body is closer to the ground. This is supported by those narrations of the hadith which do not contain the words ‘He should place his hands...’ such as the narration of Tirmidhi in which it is related from Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘When one of you sinks to the ground (for sujud) does he fall down in the manner of a camel?’

Another explanation offered by Allamah Anwar Shah al Kashmiri is that the meaning of the words ‘He should place his hands before the knees’ is to place the hands on the knees before placing the knees on the ground, not that the hands should be placed on the ground before the knees because the word ‘ground’ is not mentioned in conjunction with the word ‘hands’ anywhere in the related ahadeeth. This reconciliation of the ahadeeth was also suggested by Muqibli as quoted by Shawkani in his Nail al Awtar. It is also supported by another narration of the same hadith of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ recorded by al Baihaqi in his al Sunan. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ relates that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘When one of you prostrates then let him not fall down in the manner of a camel. He should place his hands on his knees.’

Placing one’s knees before the hands when falling into sujud is the known view and practice of Sayyiduna Umar bin al Khattab and Abdullah bin Mas‘ud amongst the Sahabah ﷺ, Ibrahim al Nakhai, Abu Qilabah and Ibn Seereen of the Tabi‘un, Imam Abu Hanifah, Imam Abu Yusuf, Imam Muhammad, Imam Shafiee, Imam Ahmad and their followers, Sufyan al Thawri, Ishaq, the majority of the fuqaha and all of the people of Kufah. It has also been quoted from Ibn Wahb and is the view of Imam Malik as well according to the narration of Ibn Sh‘aban. Imam Tirmidhi says after narrating the above hadith of Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ, ‘This is the practice of most of the people of learning. They are of the view that a man should place his knees before his hands, and when rising he should lift his hands before his knees.’
Chapter 9

To stand up straight after sujud and not to sit.

When a musalli completes the second sajdah in the first and third rak‘ah of salah he should rise up straight to the next rak‘ah and not sit in between. This is the view of the majority of the scholars, and this is the understanding gained about this part of salah from most ahadeeth.

Some are of the opinion that after the second sajdah person should sit properly before rising to the second and fourth rak‘ah. They claim that this is sunnah and should be done by all healthy or sick, young or old. This sitting is often referred to as ‘jilsah al istirahah’ (the sitting of rest). As with many other masaail there are some of this opinion who are very persistent and vociferous in their claim that this is the only valid practice and all else is contrary to the sunnah.

Whilst the proponents of the former view accept the validity of the sitting of rest they maintain that this should only be adopted by those in need such as the old and the sick. This, they say, is the best understanding and application of all the ahadeeth on the subject. Below is a discussion of those ahadeeth that support this view followed by an analysis of the narrations that are quoted by those who say that the ‘jilsah al istirahah’ (the sitting of rest) is a sunnah for all.

1. In the longer hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah about the man who did not complete his salah the Prophet says to him, ‘Then fall down into prostration until you are motionless, then rise and sit until you are motionless, then fall down prostrate again until you are motionless, then rise and stand straight. Do this throughout your salah.’

468 Bukhari 6290 & 760.
The Prophet ﷺ does not mention any sitting after the second prostration but instructs him to stand up straight.

2. In the long hadith of the description of the Prophet’s ﷺ salah, Sayyiduna Abu Malik al Ashari ﷺ also said the takbeer and fell down into prostration, said the takbeer and raised his head, said the takbeer and fell down into sujud, then said the takbeer again and stood upright. When he completed his salah he turned to his people and, facing them, said, “Remember my takbeer and learn my ruk’u and sujud, for this is the prayer of the Messenger ﷺ with which he would lead us at this time of the day.”

3. Sayyiduna Abbas or Ayyash bin Sahl al Saidee reports that he was in a gathering where his father, who was a companion of the Prophet ﷺ, was present. In the gathering there was also Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah, Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Saidee, and Sayyiduna Abu Usaid. He relates a long hadith in which he mentions that ‘He (the Prophet ﷺ) said the takbeer and prostrated. He then said the takbeer again and stood up but did not sit.”

4. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah ﷺ says, ‘The Prophet ﷺ would stand up on the balls of his feet in salah.’

After quoting this hadith, Tirmidhi says, ‘This is the practice of the people of learning. They prefer that a man stands up on the balls of his feet in salah.’

Abu al Tayyib writes in his commentary of Tirmidhi, ‘Tirmidhi’s words “This is the practice of the people of learning” show that this hadith is hasan, for if it was not hasan, but weak then they would never have acted upon it, especially when contradicted (by other reports).

Hafidh Ibn al Humam says in Fath al Qadeer, ‘Tirmidhi’s statement “This is the practice of the people of learning” shows that this has a basis, even though this particular chain may be weak.

5. Ikrimah says, ‘I prayed salah behind a shaikh in Makkah; he pronounced 22 takbeers. I said to Ibn Abbas ﷺ that he is a fool. He replied, “May your mother lose you. This is the sunnah of Abu al Qasim ﷺ.”

Imam Nimawi says that it can be understood from the above hadith that there is no posture or sitting of rest between the sujud and qiyan, the prostration and standing. For if it was so then the number of takbeers would have been 24 because it has been established that the Prophet ﷺ would say the takbeer at the time of each rising, bowing, standing and sitting.

6. Numaan bin Abu Ayyash says, ‘I have seen more than one of the companions of the Prophet ﷺ. When they raised their heads from the prostration in the first and third rak’ah they would stand up straight as they were and they would not sit.’

7. Abdul Rahman bin Yazeed says, ‘I observed Abdullah bin Mas’ud in salah, and saw him rise

\[469\] Ahmad 22399. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is hasan (450).


\[471\] Tirmidhi 288 and Baghawi 669.

\[472\] Ahmad 1889, Bukhari 755 and Ibn Hibban 1762.

\[473\] Ibn Abi Shaibah 3989. Imam Nimawi says 451 that its isnad is hasan.
and not sit.’ He adds, ‘He would stand up on the balls of his feet in the first and third rak‘ah.’ ⁴⁷³

Hafidh Ibn Hajar says in Fath al Bari, ‘Saeeed bin Mansoor has reported with a weak sanad that Abu Hurairah ﷺ would stand up on the balls of his feet. He has also reported the same from Abdullah bin Mas‘ud ﷺ with a saheeh sanad.’ ⁴⁷⁵

8. Wa’ab bin Kaysan says, ‘I saw Abdullah bin al Zubair ﷺ standing up on the balls of his feet when he had completed the second prostration.’ ⁴⁷⁶

9. Khaiyam and Na‘fi’ both report that Abdullah bin Umar ﷺ would stand up on the balls of his feet in salah. ⁴⁷⁷

10. Abu Atiyyah reports that Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas ﷺ and Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ would do the same. ⁴⁷⁸

11. Sh‘ab‘i says, ‘Umar, Ali and the companions of the Prophet ﷺ would stand up on the balls of their feet in salah.’ ⁴⁷⁹

Ubaid bin Abi al J‘ad reports the same about Sayyiduna Ali ﷺ. ⁴⁸⁰

12. Zuhri says, ‘Our Sheikhs would not do mumayalah (reel), meaning when one of them would rise from the second sajdah in the first rak‘ah he would stand up as he was and not sit.’ ⁴⁸¹

Answers to the ahadeeth of sitting after the second sajdah.

Imam Bukhari has narrated the hadeeth of Abu Hurairah ﷺ in which the Prophet ﷺ explains the method of salah to the one who did not complete his salah, Khallad bin Rafi’. Part of this hadeeth reads,

1. ‘Then fall down into prostration until you are motionless, then rise and sit until you are motionless, then fall down prostrate again until you are motionless, then rise and sit still. Do this throughout your salah.’ ⁴⁸²

Some have taken this as evidence that the sitting after the sajdah is a sunnah of salah. However, as Hafidh Ibn Hajar has explained in Fath al Bari that the narrator of this report has been opposed by others who have not included the words ‘then rise and sit still’ (after the second sajdah) in their narrations. Their wording is preferred and Imam Bukhari has hinted at this by saying at the end of this hadeeth, ‘Abu Usamah (one of the other reporters of this hadeeth whose narration has been quoted above) said, ‘then rise and stand straight.’

2. Sayyiduna Malik bin al Huwayriyth ﷺ reports that when the Prophet ﷺ would be (rising for the second or fourth rak‘ah) in his salah he would not stand up until he had sat down first. ⁴⁸⁵

This is understood to refer to the Prophet’s salah prayer in his old age. This explanation is supported by a hadeeth narrated by Abu Dawood on the authority of Muawiyah bin Abi Sufyan ﷺ that the Prophet ﷺ

---

⁴⁷³ Abdul Razzaq 2966 & 2967, Ibn Abi Shaibah 3979 & 3986, Tabarani in al M‘ijam al Kabbas 9/266 no. 9/27, and Baihaqi 2764. Hafidh Haithami says 2/136 that its narrators are those of Bukhari, and Baihaqi has also declared it saheeh.
⁴⁷⁴ Fath al Bari 2/385.
⁴⁷⁵ Ibn Abi Shaibah 3983 & 3984. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh (453).
⁴⁷⁶ Ibn Abi Shaibah 3980 & 3985.
⁴⁷⁷ Abdul Razzaq 2968.
⁴⁷⁸ Ibn Abi Shaibah 3982.
⁴⁷⁹ Ibn Abi Shaibah 3978.
⁴⁸⁰ Ibn Abi Shaibah 3987.
⁴⁸¹ Bukhari 5897.
⁴⁸² Fath al Bari 1/145.
⁴⁸³ Bukhari 6290 & 760.
⁴⁸⁴ Bukhari 789, Abu Dawood 844, Tirmidhi 287, and Nasai 1152.
said, ‘Do not proceed before me in ruk‘u or sujud, because no matter how earlier I may bow down before you into ruk‘u you will catch up with me when rising from it. Indeed I have gained weight.’

Ibn al Qayyim writes in his Zad al Maad.

‘This has also been reported from a number of the Prophet’s companions. All those who have described the salah of the Prophet have not mentioned this sitting; it has only been mentioned in the hadeeth of Abu Humaid and Malik bin al Huwayrith. If this was his permanent practice it would certainly have been mentioned by those who have described his salah. Also, the mere fact that he did it does not indicate that it is a sunnah of salah, unless it becomes known that he did it on the basis that it is a sunnah in whose practice he should be emulated. If it is assumed, however, that he did it out of need then this does not show that it is a sunnah of salah.’

Ibn al Turkumani has also claimed in al Jawhar al Naqiy that this was not a sunnah of the Prophet’s salah on the argument that Bukhari has narrated the hadeeth of Malik bin al Huwayrith with a chain that contains Ayyub reporting from Abu Qilabah reporting from Malik bin al Huwayrith. As part of the longer hadeeth Ayyub says, ‘He (Amr bin Salamah) would do something that I have not seen them (the learned Tabi‘un of his time) do: he would sit in the third and fourth rak‘ah.’

Imam Tahawi and Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal have both narrated the same hadeeth in which Ayyub says, ‘I saw Amr bin Salamah do something which I have not seen you do. When he would raise his head from the sajdah in the second and fourth rak‘ah in which there is sitting he would sit properly and then stand.’ Imam Tahawi says, ‘Ayyub’s statement that he had not seen the people do

---

486 Ahmad 16396, Darimi 1315, Ibn Majah 963, and Abu Dawood 619. Booseeree says (Chapter 171, hadeeth no.439) that this isnad is saheeh.

487 Zad al Maad 1/241.

488 Bukhari 785.

489 Ahmad 20016 and Tahawi 4/355.

490 al Jawhar al Naqiy 2/181.
Chapter 10

Clenching one's fists in salah.

Certain people have quoted the following hadith to argue that when a person rises to the next rak'ah he should support himself on clenched fists like a person kneading dough:

'When the Prophet ﷺ would stand up in salah he would place his hands upon the ground just as an aajin does.'

They have taken the word aajin to mean 'one who kneads dough'. However, Hafiz Ibn Hajar says in al Talkhees al Habeer:

'Ibn al Salah has said in his notes on al Waseet that this hadith is not authentic and is unknown. It is not permissible to use it in evidence. Nawawi has also said in Sharh al Muhaddib that this hadith is weak or false, it has no basis.'

Hafidh Ibn Hajar also says later:

'Ibn al Salah has said that many non-Arabs have acted on this (clenching their fists as though kneading dough). This is tantamount to establishing a posture in salah that has no relationship to it with an inauthentic hadith. Even if the hadith was authentic this is not its meaning because aajin means an old man.'

After quoting a poem to prove his point about the correct meaning of the word aajin, Ibn al Salah goes on to say that the parable to be understood from 'ajin' (the root from which the word 'aajin' is derived) is the heavy leaning on the hands (palms) for support, not the clenching of the fists.

---

491 al Talkhees al Habeer 1:260.
Chapter 11

Tashahhud

Some people argue that in tashahhud we should read

السلام على النبي

‘Assalamu ala al Nabiyy’ (peace be upon the Prophet) rather than

السلام عليك أبا النبي

‘Assalamu alaika ayyuha al Nabiyy’ (peace be upon you oh Prophet). They quote the hadeeth of Abdullah bin Mas’ud as narrated by Mujahid in Bukhari. The hadeeth ends with the additional words ‘This was while he was among us, but after he had been taken away we said (assalam). The narrator explains, ‘meaning upon the Prophet (ala al Nabiyy).’

However, the following things should be noted.

Hafidh Jamal ul Deen Malty writes in his al Mu'tasar after narrating the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud from Mujahid,

‘Munkar, not authentic, (meaning the additional wording) because this would mean that the tashahhud after the Prophet’s death was different to that of his lifetime, and this is contrary to what is practised by all and what has been related in saheeh narrations. Abu Bakr and Umar would teach people tashahhud during the time of their khilafah in the manner that it was recited during the Prophet’s lifetime, i.e., (Assalamu alaika ayyuha al Nabiyy).’

Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri says as quoted by Muhaddith Shabbir Ahmad Uthmani in his commentary of Saheeh Muslim,

Fath al Mulhim:

‘It seems that this different wording (Assalamu ala al Nabiyy) was not widespread amongst the Sahabah because it has not been passed down from them. Ibn Mas’ud and his companions taught the same

492 M’aarif al Sunan 3/87 quoting from al Mu’tasar 1/35.
I believe - and Allah knows best - that this addition of Mujahid is possibly his own adoption of Ibn Abbas’s personal *ijihad*, because he was one of his closest companions. Saeed bin Mansoor quotes Abu Ubaidah who reports that his father, Abdullah bin Mas’ud mentioned that the Prophet ﷺ taught them *tashahhud*. He narrated the whole *tashahhud* upon which Ibn Abbas ﷺ said, “We used to say *Assalama Alaika Ayyuhaal Nabiiyy* when the Prophet ﷺ was alive.” Ibn Mas’ud ﷺ replied, “This is how we were taught and this is how we will teach.” This quite clearly shows that this was Ibn Abbas’s *ijihad* and Ibn Mas’ud ﷺ did not agree with him. It is quite possible, therefore, that Mujahid may have followed his teacher’s *ijihad*. Ibn Abbas ﷺ, Mujahid, Ataa, and Ibn Jurayj were all residents of Makkah, and it was there that they spread their knowledge. (In this particular *mas’alah* there is no one who agrees with them from the people of Madinah and Iraq, and as the individual and particular views of the people of Makkah are many, (some of them have been discussed earlier) this should be considered one of them.

Besides, Mujahid’s own other narration as recorded by Muslim does not contain this addition. It seems, therefore, that sometimes he would add these words from his own *ijihad* and at other times leave them out sufficing with the original narration. In short, these words are not of Ibn Mas’ud ﷺ but of someone after him. Tahawi has attributed them to Mujahid and other similar narrators in his *Mushkil al Aathaar*, and this is correct in my view.’

He later adds,

‘In short, the *hadeeth* of Ibn Mas’ud and Ibn Abbas ﷺ as narrated by the whole group is far more worthy than the particular narration of an individual (Mujahid) about whom it cannot be ascertained whether he said these additional words from his own *ijihad* or actually quoted them from those before him. Moreover, the other Sahabah such as Abu Bakr, Umar, Abu Saeed al Khudri, Muawiyyah, Salman, Abu Musa, Aisha, and Jabir ﷺ all relate the *tashahhud* with the same words as reported from Ibn Mas’ud ﷺ by a large group of narrators.’

He finally concludes,

‘Therefore, it (the *hadeeth* of Ibn Mas’ud ﷺ with the words *Assalama Alaika Ayyuhaal Nabiiyy*) is more worthy of being accepted.’
It should also be remembered that Mujahid's own other narrations do not contain these additional words as recorded by Muslim, Nasai and Abu Dawood. 494

Some muhaddithun have accepted Abu Ubaidah's hadith from his father Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud 495. Darqutni has declared Abu Ubaidah's hadith from his father as being saheeh.

If the words (Assalamu alaika ayyuha al Nabiyy) were to be changed after the Prophet's death then they should have also been changed for those who were reciting the tashahhud in his absence during his lifetime, but this was never the case. No distinction was made about the Prophet being able to hear the salam or being present in the vicinity, and this should also be the case after his death 496.

The words (Assalamu alaika ayyuha al Nabiyy) are mutawatir in all the tashahhuds passed down to us from the Sahabah. They cannot be changed because of one shahad narration such as that of Mujahid. (He himself does not mention these changed words in some chains as explained above.) Great care was taken in memorising, preserving and conveying the words of tashahhud so much so that the process has been described by Abdullah bin Mas'ud as similar to that of learning and preserving the Quran. They were even particular about individual letters and were not willing to accommodate any change. Imam Muhammad has mentioned in his narration of Imam Malik's al Muwatta 495 that Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas'ud 497 would dislike the addition or deletion of even a single letter in tashahhud.

Aswad reports, 'Abdullah (Ibn Mas'ud) would teach us the tashahhud of salah. He would correct us on Alif and Waw.' 498

During his caliphate Sayyiduna Umar taught the tashahhud to the people from the mimbar of Rasulullah with the words (Assalamu alaika ayyuha al Nabiyy) and despite the presence of the Sahabah no one disapproved. 499

Qasim bin Muhammad narrates from his aunt Aisha that when reciting tashahhud she would say 'Assalamu alaika ayyuha al Nabiyy'. 500

---

494 Muslim 402, Abu Dawood 971 and Nasai 1171.
495 1/476.
496 Bazzar as quoted by Ibn Hajar in Mukhtasar Zawaid al Bazzar 397. He adds that the isnad is saheeh. Hafidh Haithami 2/141 also declares it saheeh.
497 Malik 204, Imam Shafiee in al Risalah p268, Hakim 979, Baihaqi 2831.
498 Baihaqi in M'arijah al Sunan 3/59 no. 3685.
Chapter 12

The movement of the finger in tashahhud

Sayyiduna Abdullah Ibn al Zubair ﷺ narrates that the Prophet ﷺ would point with his finger when he prayed and he would not move it. 499

The wording of this hadeeth informs us that the permanent practice of the Prophet ﷺ was to merely point with the finger and not move it. This is the correct and established sunnah of the Prophet of Allah ﷺ that is recognised and followed by the majority of the ummah.

Certain people, however, choose to continue moving the finger in tashahhud thinking that this is sunnah. In evidence they cite two narrations, one on the authority of Sayyiduna Wail Ibn Hujr ﷺ and the other from Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ. A close look at both narrations will reveal that they are less authentic than the above hadeeth, and their meaning, as understood and explained by the Muhaddithun, the very people who have recorded and transmitted them, is different to that which is commonly construed by people who make an isolated reading of these ahadeeth.

1. Sayyiduna Wail Ibn Hujr ﷺ says towards the end of a longer hadeeth, 'He (the Prophet ﷺ) clenched two of his fingers and made a circle with them. He then lifted his finger and I saw him moving it praying with it.' 500

499 Abu Dawood 989, Nasai 1270, Abu Awanah 2/226 (Dar al Ma’rifah edition, Beirut), Baihaqi 2786 and Baghawi 676. Imam Nawawi has declared it saheeh in his al Majm‘u’ 3/454.

500 Ahmad 18391, Nasai 889 & 1268 and Ibn Khuzaimah 223. Ibn Khuzaimah adds after narrating the hadeeth, 'There is no mention of the words ‘moving it’ in any narration except this related by Zaidah.
This extra wording of (yuhammeratuha) moving it' is _shaadh_. Many reliable narrators have reported this _hadeeth_ but they have not mentioned these words of moving the finger; only one narrator has done so. The other _ahadeeth_ on the subject of pointing the finger in _tashahhud_ also do not mention any movement. In fact it is categorically denied in the _saheeh hadeeth_ of Sayyiduna Abdullah ibn al Zubair _ra_ quoted earlier. Therefore, this extra wording of (yuhammeratuha) 'moving it' is _shaadh_.

The above _hadeeth_ is reported by Aasim bin Kulaib from his father from Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr _ra_. A good number of narrators (listed below) relate it from Aasim bin Kulaib. However, from all these only Zaidah bin Qudamah reports the extra wording of (yuhammeratuha) 'moving it'.

- Sufyan bin Uuyaynah reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Ahmad, Humaidi, Nasai, and Tabarani.
- Khalid bin Abdullah al Wasiti reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Baihaqi.
- Qais bin Rabee' reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Tabarani.
- Abu al Ahwas Salam bin Saleem reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Abu Dawood al Tayalisi and Tabarani.
- Sufyan al Thawri reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Abdul Razzaq in his _Musannat_ and Tabarani.
- Sh'ubah reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Ahmad, Tabarani, and Ibn Khuzaimah.
- Abdullah bin Idrees al Awadi reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Ibn Majah.
- Zuhair bin Muawiyah reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Ahmad and Tabarani.
- Abu Awanah reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Tabarani.
- Abdul Wahid bin Ziyaad reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Ahmad.
- Bishr bin al Mufadhal reports it from Aasim bin Kulaib as recorded by Nasai and Abu Dawood.

All of the above narrators have reported this _hadeeth_ from Aasim bin Kulaib but only with words of the meaning 'He pointed with his forefinger' or 'He pointed with his forefinger and prayed with it.'

---

501 Ahmad 18392.
502 Humaidi 885.
503 Nasai 1263.
504 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/33.
505 Baihaqi 2784.
506 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/33.
507 Abu Dawood al Tayalisi 1020.
508 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/34.
509 Abdul Razzaq 2522.
510 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/34.
511 Ahmad 18376 & 18398.
512 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/35.
513 Ibn Khuzaimah 697 & 698.
514 Ibn Majah 912.
515 Ahmad 18120.
516 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/36.
517 Tabarani in _al Mu'jam al Kabeer_ 22/38.
518 Ahmad 18371.
519 Nasai 1265.
520 Abu Dawood 957.
None of them apart from Zaidah bin Qudmah have reported the extra wording of (ya’harrikuhu) ‘moving it’. This addition is therefore shaaadh and cannot be accepted especially since it is clearly contradicted by the saheeh hadeeth of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin al Zubair  who categorically negates the movement of the finger, and also by the silence of all the other ahadeeth on the subject of pointing the finger in tashahhud, such as those of Sayyiduna Ibn Umar, Sayyiduna Abu Humaid al Sa’idee and Sayyiduna Numair al Khuzai who do not mention anything to resemble the constant movement of the finger.

It should also be remembered that Sayyiduna Wail Ibn Hujr  speaks of having seen this action of the Prophet  once, as he says in the beginning of the long hadeeth ‘I saw.....’. On the other hand, Sayyiduna Abdullah Ibn al Zubair  has reported the permanent practice of the Prophet  by employing the words ‘would not move it’.

2. Sayyiduna Ibn Umar  narrates that the Prophet  said ‘The movement of the fingers in prayer frightens away Shaitan’. 521

Imam Baihaqi has declared this hadeeth dhaeef (weak) saying, ‘The only person to narrate this is Muhammad bin Amr al Waqiyid and he is not authentic.’ Hafidh Ibn Hajar, Hafidh Suyuti and Munawi also say that it is dhaeef.

Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal has branded the above narrator, Muhammad bin Amr al Waqiyid a liar, and Ibn al Madini has accused him of fabricating hadeeth. 522

Allamah Abdul Hayy Luckhnawi writes in al Siyayah:

‘Suyuti has quoted this narration of Ibn Umar  in his al Jami’ al Sagheer and ascribed it to Baihaqi. Azizi says in his commentary of 523

al Jami’ al Sagheer, “Its isnad is dhaeef. The verdict of the Shafiee scholars is the desirability of lifting the finger without (continuous) movement.”

Even if, for argument’s sake, we accept ‘the movement of the finger’ in these narrations we will only take such words to only refer to the single movement of raising the finger in tashahhud. This is the very explanation given by the muhaddithun.

Baihaqi who has narrated both hadeeth in his collection has explained the hadeeth of Sayyiduna Wail Ibn Hujr  in the following manner:

‘The movement mentioned in this hadeeth probably means the single pointing of the finger, not its continuous movement. In this way, the narration will be in agreement with the hadeeth of Abdullah Ibn al Zubair 523

Sheikh al Hadeeth Moulaana Zakariyyah also provides a similar explanation in his Arabic commentary of al Muwatta Malik, Awjaz al Masalik. He says,

‘Most of the narrations of Wail bin Hujr  contain the wording “moving it, praying with it.” It is quite clear that the term “praying with it” is an elaboration of the words “moving it”, and does not mean anything other than movement of the finger at the time of pointing’. 524

In support of this he later quotes from Kashf al Ghummah that Sayyiduna Abdullah Ibn al Zubair  used to say that the Prophet  would not move his forefinger except at the time of pointing, and by pointing the finger he sought to signify sincerity and the oneness of Allah.

He also adds that Imam Nasai is also inclined to this interpretation. This is understood by the fact that he has inserted a chapter heading in his Sunan titled ‘The place to focus the eyes in salah and the movement of the finger’ but surprisingly has not included the hadeeth

521 Baihaqi 2788 and Ibn Adiyy 7/483.
522 Mitzan al Fiddal 7999.
523 Baihaqi 2787.
524 Awjaz al Masalik 2/117.
of moving the finger. In fact, he has quoted the contrasting hadith of Sayyiduna Abdullah ibn al Zubair.

The same is to be said of the ‘movement’ mentioned in the hadith of Sayyiduna Ibn Umar quoted earlier, that it is in reference to the single movement of raising the finger and putting it down again.

Muhaddith Khalil Ahmad Sharanpuri, further explaining this reconciliation of the ahadeeth, writes in his Arabic commentary of Abu Dawood, Badhi al Majhud:

‘In the view of the Hanafi scholars there is no disparity between the two hadith (the hadith of Wail ibn Hujr that suggests movement of the finger and the hadith of Abdullah ibn al Zubair that denies it), for they clarify that when pointing the finger in tashahhud one should lift it at the time of negation (saying la ilaha ‘there is no god....’) and put it down on affirmation (saying illallah ‘but Allah....’). This, i.e., the raising and putting down of the finger is what is referred to by ‘movement’ in the hadith. As for the denial of movement (in the saheeh hadith of Abdullah ibn al Zubair raahilahahu anhu), this is pertaining to the continuous movement of the finger as practised by some of the ahl al hadith.\(^\text{s25}\)

The verdicts of the madhahib.

Sheikh al Hadeeth Moulaya Muhammad Zakariyyah also outlines the verdicts of the four schools of fiqh on this issue by quoting from their original books. He writes in his Awjaz al Masalik, that the ruling of the Hanafi, Shafiee and Hanbali schools of fiqh is the same, i.e., the finger should not be moved continuously in tashahhud. In fact, some Shafiee scholars rule that the salah is rendered invalid by the constant movement of the finger because this constitutes excessive action, something which goes against the universally accepted rule of serenity and tranquillity in salah. And although he states that the most common verdict of the Maliki scholars is of moving the finger in tashahhud, he does add that Ibn al Qasim, one of Imam Malik’s foremost students, opposes this view and is in agreement with the majority of the scholars. He also quotes another famous Maliki scholar, Ibn al Arabi who vehemently denounces the practice of moving the finger in tashahhud.

Ibn al Arabi says in his commentary of Tirmidhi, Aaridhah al Ahwadhi,

‘Beware of constantly moving your fingers in tashahhud. Do not pay any attention to the narration of Ubiyyah for it is a problem. I am bewildered by those who say that the movement of the finger is a means of repelling Shaitan. Know that when you shake one finger at Shaitan he will shake ten at you. Shaitan can only be repelled by sincerity, devotion, prayer, and seeking the protection of Allah, not by the movement of the finger. One should only point with the finger as has been mentioned in the hadith. The hadith of Wail which contains the words ‘their hands would move beneath their cloaks in prayer’ is not authentic, and even if we were to assume its authenticity its correct explanation is the movement of the hand at the time of spreading and closing it.\(^\text{s26}\)

Ibn al Hajib al Maliki has also clearly mentioned in his al Mukhtasar of Figh that the most famous view of Imam Malik is not to move the finger. Besides, the movement of the finger even according to those Maliki scholars who are of that opinion is quite different from the constant and rigorous shaking that some people practice.

Imam Nawawi al Shafiee has also categorically stated in his Fatawaa and in his al Majm’u\(^\text{s27}\) that the movement of the finger in salah is makrooh.

Contrary to what one certain author has suggested, the view of Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal and his followers also is that the finger should not be moved constantly. He writes that Imam Ahmad was asked, ‘Should a man point with his finger during prayer?’ He replied, ‘Yes, vigorously.’ The question was about pointing

\(^{525}\) Badhi al Majhud 5/320.

\(^{526}\) Awjaz al Masalik 2/117 quoting from Aaridhah al Ahwadhi.

\(^{527}\) al Majm’u 3/454.
the finger, not moving it. It is extremely strange, therefore, to conclude that Imam Ahmad’s practice was to move the finger in tashahhud.

The author of al Rawäh al Murabba’ (a concise, standard and recognised work of Hanbali fiqh) says, ‘He should point with his forefinger without moving it in his tashahhud and duaa during salah, and at other times when engaging in the dhikr of Allah in order to signify tawheed.’

Ibn Qudamah al Hanbali writes in al Maghni,

‘He should point with the forefinger raising it at the time of remembering Allah in his tashahhud for what we have narrated earlier, and he should not move it because of the hadeeth of Abdullah bin al Zubair narrated by Abu Dawood, ‘The Prophet ﷺ would point with his finger and not move it.’

The same author has also quoted a hadeeth in the following manner: ‘When he raised his finger, he would move it, supplicating with it and he used to say, ‘It is surely more powerful against the devil than iron, meaning the forefinger.’

It appears as though this is a complete hadeeth and that the (constant) movement of the finger is more powerful against the devil than iron. In fact, these are two separate hadeeth. The statement ‘When he raised his finger, he would move it, supplicating with it’ is part of a hadeeth narrated by Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ, and the words ‘It is surely more powerful against the devil than iron, meaning the forefinger’ are actually part of another hadeeth related by Nafi’ whose complete narration reads as follows:

Nafi’ reported that when Ibn Umar ﷺ would pray salah he would point with his finger and fix his gaze on it, and he said, ‘The Prophet ﷺ said, ‘It is surely more powerful against the devil than iron, meaning the finger.’

There is no mention in Nafi’s hadeeth of the movement of the finger, merely its pointing. The two separate reports should not be confusingly placed together to give the impression that they form one hadeeth about the constant movement of the finger in tashahhud.

The raising of the finger.

The ulama of the Hanafi fiqh say that the finger should be raised at the point of negation (La ilaha) and then replaced on affirmation (Ilallah). Some ulama also say that the raising of the forefinger and the clutching of the rest is for the purpose of making duaa after the tashahhud (as is mentioned in the above ahadeeth), therefore the finger should be kept raised till the end of salah. This is mentioned quite clearly in one hadeeth.

Savyduna Shihab ﷺ says, ‘I came upon the Prophet ﷺ whilst he was praying. He had placed his left hand upon his left thigh, his right hand upon his right thigh and he had spread his forefinger (as opposed to clutching it) saying:

(Oh He who transforms the hearts! Make my heart steadfast upon your religion.)

A similar hadeeth has been narrated by Abu Ya’laa al Mawsili in his Musnad with the words ’pointing with his forefinger’ instead of ‘had spread his forefinger’.

---

528 al Maghni 2/999.

529 Ahmad 5964; and Bazzar as quoted in Kashf al Asrar 563.

530 Tirmidhi 3587. Muhammad Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani says that there is no fault in the sanad (839).

531 Abu Ya’laa as quoted by Ibn Hajar in al Mattalah al Aytah 539.
The above meaning is also conveyed in the following narrations:

Sayyiduna Numair al Khuzai narrates that he saw the Prophet \( \mathbin{\#} \) seated in salah. He had placed his right arm upon his right thigh and raised his forefinger, having bent it slightly whilst praying.\(^{532}\)

Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr \( \mathbin{\#} \) reports, ‘I prayed salah behind the Prophet \( \mathbin{\#} \) and said to myself “I will preserve the salah of the Prophet \( \mathbin{\#} \).” When he sat for tashahhud he spread his left foot upon the ground and sat on it, and placed his left palm upon his left thigh and his right arm upon his right thigh. He then shaped his fingers making a circle with the middle finger and the thumb and began praying with the other one (forefinger).\(^{533}\)

He also relates, ‘I saw the Prophet \( \mathbin{\#} \) make a circle with his thumb and middle finger, and lift the one next to it (the forefinger) praying with it in tashahhud.\(^{534}\)

Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar \( \mathbin{\#} \) relates that when the Prophet \( \mathbin{\#} \) would sit in salah, he would place his right hand upon his knee and raise his forefinger praying with it, whilst his left hand would be spread out upon his left knee.\(^{535}\)

This is also the view of the Hanafi Muhaddith Moulaana Rasheed Ahmad Gongohi. He says, ‘It should be known regarding what some

\(^{532}\) Ahmad 15439, Abu Dawood 991, Nasai 1274 and Ibn Hibban 1943.

\(^{533}\) Saeed bin Mansoor as quoted by Imam Nimawi 457. Also reported by Tahawi 1259. Imam Nimawi says that its isnad is saheeh. A similar narration has also been recorded by Abu Dawood Tayalisi 1020.

\(^{534}\) Ibn Majah 912 and Nasai 1264. Bouseenee (Chapter 163, no. 336) and Imam Nimawi (464) have both declared the hadeeth saheeh.

\(^{535}\) Muslim 580, Timidhi 294 and Nasai 1269.

\(^{536}\) al Kawkab al Durri 1289.

\(^{537}\) Awn al Ma’bood: Chapter of salah, section on pointing with the finger in tashahhud.
Chapter 13

Difference in salah between men and women

Some people are of the view that all the laws of salah are common to both men and women, and that there is no difference between them. They also claim that the hadeeth 'Pray as you have seen me praying' is general and, therefore, should be applied equally to both men and women. It should be realised, however, that our own interpretation and logical inference of this hadeeth cannot compare with the other ahadeeth of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, and the verdicts and practice of the Sahabah and Tabi'un ﷺ quoted below.

The Shariah has ordained distinct rules for men and women in many important questions of salah. For example,

- *Jumuah* is *fardh* upon men but not on women, and the Eid prayer is *wajib* for men but again not for women.

1. Sayyiduna Tariq bin Shihab ﷺ reports that the Prophet ﷺ said, *Jumuah in congregation is an obligatory duty upon every Muslim except four people: a slave, a woman, a child, and one who is sick.* 538

2. Sayyidatuna Umm Atiyah ﷺ says as part of a longer hadeeth, *We have been forbidden from following funerals and there is no Jumuah upon us.* 539

- The reward of congregational prayer for men is twenty seven times more than an individual prayer. Contrary to this, the more rewarding prayer of a woman is that which is most

---

538 Abu Dawood 1067 and Hakim 1062. Hakim declared it *saheeh* and Dhahabi agreed.
539 Ibn Khuzaimah 1722.
concealed and performed within the confines of her innermost living quarters.

3. Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Mas’ud reports that the Prophet said, ‘The prayer of a woman in her makhdah (partition) is better than her prayer in her hujrah (chamber), and her prayer in her hujrah is better than her prayer in her bair (house).’

4. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah narrates that the Prophet said, ‘The most beloved salah to Allah of a woman is one that she performs in the darkest spot of her home.’

• Unlike men, women should not give adhan or say the iqamah.

5. Sayyidatuna Asmaa narrates as part of a longer hadith that the Prophet said, ‘There is no adhan, iqamah or Jumuah upon women.’

6. Sayyidatuna Ibn Umar says, ‘There is no adhan or iqamah upon women.’

• There is a great difference in the awrah of a man and that of a woman in salah. Women must cover their entire body including the hair, leaving only the face, hands and feet exposed.

7. Ummul Mu’mineen Aisha reports that the Prophet said, ‘Allah does not accept the salah of a mature female without a scarf.’

• Women cannot lead men in salah.

8. Abu Bakrah reports that the Prophet said, ‘Never will those people succeed who have appointed a woman over them.’

9. Jabir bin Abdullah reports as part of a longer hadith that the Prophet said, ‘Know that a woman should not lead a man in salah.’

• For the purpose of correcting or deterring someone in salah, men should say ‘subhanallahu’ loudly, whilst women are only allowed to clap their hands.

10. Sayyiduna Abu Hurairah reports that the Prophet said, ‘Tasbeeh is for men, and clapping is for women.’

The different postures, positions and rulings concerning the prayer of the female are not the invention of a group or an individual but the teaching of the Prophet himself. He was the very first person to differentiate between the prayer of a man and a woman.

11. Yazid bin Abi Habib reports that the Prophet passed by two women who were praying salah. He said, ‘When you prostrate, let part of your body cling to the earth, for women are unlike men in this regard.’

---

540 Abu Dawood 570 and Ibn Khuzaimah 1690.
541 Ibn Khuzaimah 1691, and Tabarani in al-Mujjam al-Kabir as mentioned by Hafidh Haythami 2/35. Hafidh Haythami also says that its narrators are authentic.
542 Baihaqi 1921.
543 Baihaqi 1920.
545 Ahmad 19507, Bukhari 4163, Tirmidhi 2262 and Nasai 5388.
546 Ibn Majah 1081 and Baihaqi 5131.
547 Bukhari 1145.
548 Abu Dawood in his al-Maraseel p18 (Muassassah al-Risalah edition), and Baihaqi 3201.
12. Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ narrates that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘When a woman sits in salah she should place one thigh over the other, and when she prostrates she should press her stomach to her thighs in a manner that is the most concealing for her. Indeed Allah looks at her saying, “Oh my angels! I make you witness that I have forgiven her.”’

13. Sayyiduna Wail bin Hujr ﷺ reports that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Oh Ibn Hujr! When you pray make your hands level with your ears. And the woman shall raise her hands close to her bosom.’

We derive some very important and fundamental principles about the prayer of a woman from all the above hadeeth.

- The laws of salah are not always the same for men and women.
- The sunnah posture of a female in any position of salah is that which is the most concealing for her.

Imam Baihaqi says,

‘All of the laws of salah in which a woman differs from a man are based on the principle of satr (concealment). This means that the woman is instructed to do all that which is more concealing for her. The following chapters of hadeeth explain this meaning in detail.’

As mentioned earlier, this variation in the salah of a woman has been prescribed by none other than the Prophet ﷺ himself. It has remained the practice of the whole ummah till this day and is also reflected in the rulings of the Sahabah and Tabi’un. The ulama and fuqaha of all four schools have always recognised this difference and, as is evident in their books of fiqh, have always observed the above principles whenever making a ruling about the salah of a woman. Following are a few narrations detailing the verdicts and practice of the Sahabah ﷺ together with the verdicts of some of the Tabi’un and the ulama of the different schools of fiqh:

Verdicts and practice of the Sahabah ﷺ.

Khalid bin al Lajlaaj reports as part of a longer hadeeth that women were ordered to do tarabbi’ when sitting in salah.

Nafi’ narrates that Safiyyah ﷺ would pray and do tarabbi’.

Nafi’ also narrates that the womenfolk of Sayyiduna Abdullah bin Umar’s ﷺ family would do tarabbi’.

Sayyiduna Ibn Umar ﷺ was once asked, ‘How did women pray their salah during the time of the Prophet ﷺ?’ He replied, ‘They used to sit cross legged until they were told to practice ihtifaz.’

Sayyiduna Ali ﷺ says, ‘When a woman prostrates she should do ihtifaz and press her thighs together,’ and in Abdul Razzaq’s narration ‘press her thighs against her stomach.’

---

549 Baihaqi 3199. He also declared it daaeef.
550 Tabarani in al M‘ujam al Kabeer 22/19 no.28. Hafidh Haithami says 2/103, ‘Tabarani has narrated it as part of a long hadeeth on the virtue of Wail bin Hujr ﷺ with a chain of Mainoonah bint Hujr narrating from her auntie Umm Yahya bint Abdul Jabbar. I have not identified her but the rest of the narrators are reliable.’
551 Baihaqi 2/314.
552 i.e., to draw out one’s right leg towards the right side of the body and to place the left leg beneath the right leg.
553 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2783.
554 Abdul Razzaq 5074 and Ibn Abi Shaibah 2784.
555 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2789.
556 Narrated by all three, Abu Muhammad al Bukhari, Qadhi Umar bin al Hasan al Asnani, and Ibn Khusruw in their Musnads of Imam Abu Hanifah’s ahadeeth. Ihtifaz is to lean to one side and rest on the posterior. It is more or less the same as snafi.
557 Abdul Razzaq 5072 and Ibn Abi Shaibah 2777. Muhaddith Dhafer Ahmad Uthmani 3/32 has declared it hasan.
Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas ﷺ was asked about the prayer of a woman. He replied, 'She should pull herself close together and do ihtifaz.'

**Verdicts of the Tabi' unin and other ulama.**

Ibn Jurayj reports, 'I asked Ata'a: “Should a woman motion with her hands at the time of takbeer as a man does?” he replied, “She should not raise her hands with takbeer in the manner of men.” Ata'a then demonstrated (the way in which she should.) He placed his hands very low and then pulled them towards him. He then said, “The posture of a woman in salah is not that of a man.”

Ata'a also says, 'A woman should pull herself together when she bows down into ruk'ah: she should bring up her arms to her stomach and pull herself together as much as possible. When she prostrates she should bring up her arms close to her and press her bosom and stomach against her thighs: she should pull herself together as much as possible.'

Hasan al Basri says, 'A woman should pull herself close together in sujud.'

Hasan and Qatadah both say, 'When a woman prostrates she should pull herself together as much as possible. She should not allow for any space between her limbs so that her posterior is not raised."

One certain author has argued that all the descriptions of the Prophet's prayer are equally applicable to both men and women and there is nothing in the suumah that excludes women from any of them. Insha Allah the contents of this chapter will answer that claim. The author then goes on to say that this is the view of Ibrahim al Nakhai who said, 'A woman's actions in the prayer are the same as a man's.' - transmitted by Ibn Abi Shaibah (1/75/2), with a saheeh sanad from him.

This is not what Ibrahim al Nakhai said at all nor is it his view. His narration transmitted by Ibn Abi Shaibah actually reads, 'A woman will sit in salah just as a man does.' This somehow has been misquoted as 'A woman's actions in the prayer are the same as a man's.'!

In fact, Ibrahim al Nakhai's other narrations quite clearly contradict the above report. His view about the prayer of a woman as reported by Ibn Abi Shaibah and others is as follows:

Ibrahim al Nakhai says, 'When a woman prostrates she should press her stomach against her thighs. She should not raise her posterior nor should she allow for any space or distance between the limbs of her body as a man does.'

He also says, 'When a woman prostrates she should bring her thighs together and press her abdomen to them.'

He also says, 'A woman should sit to one side in salah.'

Imam Baihaqi says.

'All of the laws of salah in which a woman differs from a man are based on the principle of satr (concealment). This means that the woman is instructed to do all that which is more concealing for her. The following chapters of hadith explain this meaning in detail.'

---

558 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2778.
559 Abdul Razzaq 5066 and Ibn Abi Shaibah 2474.
560 Abdul Razzaq 5069.
561 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2781.
562 Abdul Razzaq 5068.
563 Ibn Abi Shaibah 1/242, no 2788.
564 Abdul Razzaq 5071 and Ibn Abi Shaibah 2782.
565 Ibn Abi Shaibah 2779.
566 Abdul Razzaq 5077 and Ibn Abi Shaibah 2792.
567 Baihaqi 2/314.
Ibn Qudamah al-Maqdisi al Hanbali quotes Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal in his *al Mughni* as saying, 'I consider *sadi* to be better for a woman.' He also quotes the narration of Sayyiduna Ali who says, 'When a woman prays *salah* she should do *ihitfaz* and press her thighs together.\(^{569}\)

Imam Ahmad was asked about how a woman should prostrate and sit for *tashahhud*. He replied, 'She should do whatever is more concealing for her.' He added, 'She should do *taraib* in *tashahhud* and draw her legs to one side (*sadl*).\(^{570}\)

According to the narration of Abu Dawood, Imam Ahmad was asked about how a woman should sit in *salah*. He replied, 'She should press her thighs together.'\(^{571}\)

Qadhi Iyad has also quoted from some *Salaf* that the *sunnah* for women is *taraib*.\(^{572}\)

All the above quite clearly demonstrates that the prayer of a woman is different in some aspects from that of a man, and that this distinction was first made by none other than the Prophet, and then maintained by the prominent *Sahabah* and *Tabi'ins*. Furthermore, as can be seen in their works, there is almost universal agreement amongst the scholars of all schools of *fiqh* on this issue.

---

\(^{568}\) To draw out the right leg to one side of the body and place the left leg beneath one's right thigh. In this way the posterior will come to rest on the ground rather than on the left leg. She would, therefore, not be resting on her legs, but on her posterior as mentioned in the narration of Sayyiduna Ali.\(^{569}\)

\(^{569}\) Ibn Qudamah in *al Mughni* 2/135.

\(^{570}\) *Masaniil* of Imam Ahmad narrated by his son Abdullah 373.

\(^{571}\) *Masaniil* of Imam Ahmad narrated by Abu Dawood p51.

\(^{572}\) *Awjaz al Masalik* 2/119.

---

List of differences between the prayer of a man and a woman.

Some of the differences as mentioned in the Hanafi books of *fiqh* are listed below.

In all the postures and movements of *salah*, including *qiyaam*, *ruk'u*, *sajdah*, and *tashahhud* a woman should adopt that which is the most modest and concealing for her.

At the beginning of *salah* a woman should not raise her hands to her ears but only to her shoulders or close to her bosom.\(^{573}\)

In *qiyaam*, women are to place their hands on their bosoms. They can fasten them in any one of the different ways *'akdh*' (grasping) or *'wadh*' (placing) described in part two, or they can simply rest the right palm on the left one.

Unlike men, in *ruk'u*, women should tuck their arms into the body and not spread them outward. They should also merely place their hands over their knees with closed fingers, and not grasp them with the fingers spread wide open.\(^{574}\) In fact, women should try to keep their fingers close together in all the postures of *salah*.

During prostration men should allow for some space and distance between their stomachs and thighs, and arms and the side of the body, whilst women should press these limbs together.

Again in prostration, men should raise their arms off the ground and allow for some distance but women should let them cling to the ground.

---

\(^{573}\) Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal also says that she should raise them slightly and, according to one narration, she should not raise them at all.

\(^{574}\) In some books of Hanafi *fiqh* it has been suggested that in *ruk'u* they should also bend their backs and knees slightly. The Hanbali scholar Imam Khirj also says as part of a longer statement, 'The woman should gather herself in *ruk'u* and *sajdah*.' (al *Mughni* 1/134.)
During the sitting of *tashahhud*, men are to rest on their legs and raise their right foot with the toes facing *qiblah*, whereas women are to take out both their legs towards the right hand side of the body and rest on the posterior without raising their right foot.

---

**Biographies**

**Ibrahim al Nakhai rahmatullahi alaih.** (46-96 AH)
The ‘fāqeeh of Iraq’ Ibrahim bin Yazid bin Qais Abu Imran al Nakhai. One of the most prominent *Tabi‘in* in terms of piety, learning, *fiqh*, and the memorisation and narration of *hadeeth*. He studied under many distinguished figures including Alqamah, Masrooq, and Aswad. He has among his students Hammad bin Abi Sulaiman (one of the teachers of Imam Abu Hanifah), A’amash and others. He died in 96 AH whilst in hiding from the tyrant governor Hajjaj. When news of his death reached Sh’abi he said, ‘By Allah, he has not left anyone behind like him.’ May Allah have mercy on him.

**Muslim bin Yasaar rahmatullahi alaih.**
Abu Abdullah Muslim bin Yasaar al Basri al Umawi. A *tabi‘ee* who was known for his worship and asceticism. He was also recognized as being one of the leading jurists of Basrah. He met a number of *Sahabah* and narrated *hadeeth* from them including Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas and Sayyiduna Ibn Umar. He died in 100 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

**Sh’abi rahmatullahi alaih.** (19-103 AH)
Amir bin Sharaheel al Sh’abi al Humairi. A famous *tabi‘ee* who himself claimed to have met more than five hundred *Sahabah*, a great many from whom he narrated *ahadeeth*. He had a prodigious memory and was also widely credited as being one of the greatest jurists of his time. He lived and died in Kufah and was one of Imam Abu Hanifah’s greatest teachers. May Allah have mercy on him.

**Abu Mijlaz rahmatullahi alaih.** (-109 AH)
Lahiq bin Humaid bin Saeed Sadoosi. A *tabi‘ee* who met and narrated *hadeeth* from a number of *Sahabah* including Sayyiduna Ibn Abbas, Sayyiduna Anas, and Sayyiduna Abu Musa al Asharee as well as many others. He passed away in Kufah in 109 AH. May Allah shower his mercy on him.
He served as a judge in the capital Baghdad under many rulers including Haroon Rashid. He was the first person ever to be given the title ‘Qadhi al Qudhat’, i.e., chief judge or ‘judge of the judges’. He died in 182 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Imam Muhammad Shaibani rahmatullahi alaih. (132-189 AH)
Muhammad bin Hasan Shaibani. The great faqeeh and Imam. He was born in Wasit in 132 AH. Apart from his two most famous teachers, Imam Abu Hanifah and Imam Abu Yusuf he also heard and narrated hadeeth from Sufyan al Thawri, Qais bin Rabee’, Awzaee, Imam Malik and others.

His own students include Imam Shafiee, Abu Ubaid al Qasim bin Sallam, Yahya bin Maaen, Muhammad bin Samaah as well as many others. He died in Reyy in 189 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Hafidh Ibn al Turkumani rahmatullahi alaih. (~749 AH)

He authored the famous al Jawhar al Noji fi al Radd ala al Baihaqi. He also compiled a takhreej of al Hidayah’s ahadeeth, and a condensed version of Ibn al Salah’s Uloom al Hadeeth. He died in 749 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Hafidh Zailae rahmatullahi alaih. (720-762)
Jamal al Deen Abdullah bin Yusuf al Zailae. He studied fiqh with Imam Fakhr al Deen Uthman bin Ali al Zailae, Imam Shams al Deen Muhammad bin Ahmad bin Adlan and others. Amongst his teachers in hadeeth were Hafidh Abu al Hajjaj al Mizzi, Hafidh Shams al Deen al Dahabi and Hafidh Ala al Deen al Mardini Ibn al Turkumani.

He produced three highly acclaimed works in his short life. They are al Ishaaf bi Ahadeeth al Kashaaif (a takhreej of Zamakshari’s Ta'zeer al Kashaaif), Mukhtasar Ma’ani al Aathaar (a condensed and edited version of Imam Tahawi’s Sharh Ma’ani al Aathaar), and Nab al Rayah fi Takhreej Ahadeeth al Hidayah (a takhreej of Imam Marghinani’s al Hidayah). Allamah Anwar Shah Kazmi wrote of him, ‘In my opinion, Hafidh Zailae rahmatullahi alaih was a greater
Hafidh than even Hafidh Ibn Hajar rahmatullahi alaih. He passed away in Cairo in the year 762 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Hafidh Haithami rahmatullahi alaih. (735-807 AH)
Ali bin Abu Bakr bin Sulaiman Nur al Deen al Haithami. The student and son in law of Hafidh Zain al Deen al Iraqi. He remained in his company throughout his life studying with him and serving him faithfully. He also studied under a few other teachers including Hafidh Ala al Deen Ibn al Turkumani al Mardini.

He produced numerous works on hadith including the famous Majm’a al Zawaid wa Manb’ha al Fawaid. Amongst his students were Hafidh Badr al Deen al Aini and Hafidh Ibn Hajar Asqalani. He died in the year 807 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Hafidh Badr al Deen al Aini rahmatullahi alaih. (762-855 AH)
He was born in Halab (Aleppo) where his father was the judge. He excelled in his studies under his father and other prominent ulama of his home city, whilst also travelling extensively in search of knowledge. Amongst his many famous teachers were Hafidh Zain al Deen Iraqi, Hafidh Nur al Deen Haithami, Hafidh Siraj al Deen al Balqeei, Muhaddith Taqi al Deen al Djawi and others. He had a long list of famous students which included Hafidh Kamal al Deen Ibn al Humam, Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubughah and Hafidh Shams al Deen Sakhawi. Hafidh Ibn Hajar also heard a few hadith from him and listed him amongst his teachers.

Hafidh Badr al Deen has many works to his name on numerous topics such as tafsir, hadith, fiqh, Arabic grammar and etymology, history and biographies. They include a monumental commentary on Bukhari titled Umdat al Qari Sharh Saheeh al Bukhari, a commentary on Imam Abu J’afar Tahawi’s Sharh Ma’ani al Akhbaar titled Nukhbat al Afkaar, and al Bidaya being a commentary of Imam Marghini’s al Hidayah. He died in 855 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Hafidh Ibn al Humam rahmatullahi alaih. (790-861 AH)
Kamal al Deen Muhammad bin Humam al Deen. He was born in Siwas where his father was the judge. He studied under many famous ulama of Cairo and Alexandria acquiring a reputation for a keen intellect whilst still very young. His teachers included Imam Siraj al Deen al Kanani, Abu Zurr’ah al Iraqi, Hafidh Badr al Deen al Aini, and Hafidh Ibn Hajar al Asqalani.

Hafidh Ibn al Humam produced a number of works including an extensive commentary of Imam Marghini’s al Hidayah titled Fath al Qadeer lil Ajiz al Faqeer. He died in Cairo in the year 861 AH leaving behind a number of distinguished students such as Sharaf al Deen Yahya al Munawi, Imam Shams al Deen Muhammad bin Muhammad bin Amer al Haq al Halabi, Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubughah, Hafidh Shams al Deen al Sakhawi, Imam Jalal al Deen al Suyuti and Hafidh Zain al Deen Zakariyyah bin Muhammad al Ansari. May Allah have mercy on them all.

Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubughah rahmatullahi alaih. (802-879 AH)
Zain al Deen Abu al Adl Qasim bin Qutubughah al Jamali. He grew up as an orphan and began his search for knowledge at a very young age. He studied under some of the most famous authorities of his time such as Hafidh Badr al Deen al Aini, Hafidh Ibn Hajar and Hafidh Kamal al Deen Ibn al Humam. Despite being his teacher, Hafidh Ibn Hajar once described him as ‘The eminent shaykh, the unique and ideal muhaddith’ and on another occasion as ‘The Imam, alammah, muhaddith, faqeer, hafidh.’

His students include Hafidh Shams al Deen al Sakhawi and Sharaf al Deen Yahya al Munawi. Hafidh Qasim bin Qutubughah authored over eighty works, most of which were on hadith and its narrators. He died in Cairo in the year 879 AH. May Allah shower his mercy upon him.

Allamah Hashim Sindhi rahmatullahi alaih. (1104-1174 AH)
Muhammad Hashim bin Abdul Ghafoor Sindhi. He was born in 1104 AH in a village of Sindh. He studied under a number of shaikhs in his home country as well as the ulama of the Haramayn when he travelled there in 1135 AH. He produced approximately 130 works on various topics including tafsir, hadith and fiqh. He died in 1174 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.
Qadhi Abid Sindhi rahmatullahi alaih. Muhammad Abid bin Ahmad Sindhi. He was originally born in Sindh but lived in Yemen for a while serving as a judge in the city of Zabeed. He finally settled in Madinah where he was appointed the head of the ulama by Muhammad Ali Pasha, the governor of Egypt. His many authored works include a commentary on Imam Abu Hanifah’s Musnad (al Mawahib al Lariyah ala Musnad al Imam Abi Hanifah); a commentary on the famous Hanafi work of fiqh, al Durr al Mukhtar titled Towal’i al Anwar ala al Durr al Mukhtar; and a commentary on Hafidh Ibn Hajar’s Bulugh al Maram. He died in Madinah in the year 1257 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Allamah Abdul Hayy Luckhnawi rahmatullahi alaih. (1264-1304 AH / 1848-1887) Abul Hasanat Abdul Hayy bin Muhammad Abdul Haleem Ansari Luckhnawi. He was born in 1264 AH/1848 in Banda, India. His learning began when he was very young and by the age of 17 he had already completed the study of a number of books on a wide range of topics. He also travelled to the Hijaz benefitting from the scholars there. Amongst those who taught him were his father, Allamah Muhammad Abdul Haleem Luckhnawi and Mufti N’imatullah Ansari Luckhnawi. He also had ijazah from a number of prominent ulama including Shaikh Ahmad bin Zaini Dahan al Shafee of Makkah, Shaikh Abdul Ghani Dihlawi and Shaikh Muhammad Abdullah al Amiree al Hanbali of Najaf.

Allamah Abdul Hayy Luckhnawi was a prolific writer and in his short life of 39 years he authored approximately 120 books of which at least 86 were in Arabic. These works covered a wide range of topics including aqeedah, tafseer, hadeeth, the priciples of hadeeth, fiqh, the principles of fiqh, Arabic grammar and etymology, history, biographies, and logic. He died in 1304 AH/1887 leaving behind many students including Imam Nimawi. May Allah shower his mercy upon him.

Imam Nimawi rahmatullahi alaih. (1278-1322 AH) Dhaheer Ahsan bin Ali Nimawi, of Nimi, a village in Adheem Abad, India. He was born in 1278 A.H. in Salihpur, Bihar. He began his studies at a young age and travelled to Lucknow, where he was instructed by a number of ulama including the famed Allamah Abdul Hady Luckhnawi, Hafidh Muhammad Abdallah Ghazipuri, Muhaddith Muhammad Saeed Adheemabadi, Muhaddith Qub al Zaman and Shah Muhammad Fadhlur Rahman Muradabadi.

He once dreamt that he was carrying the Prophet’s noble body in a funeral. He interpreted this as being a good sign that he would bear and convey the knowledge of Prophethood, and thus busily engaged himself in the learning of hadeeth.

He authored a number of works including, Aathar al Sunan (a collection of ahadeeth arranged according to the chapters and masail of fiqh); al Taleeq al Hasan (a commentary of Aathar al Sunan); Taleeq al T’aleeq (a commentary of al Taleeq al Hasan); Awshitat al Jeed on the topic of ijtihad and Taqleed; and Juta al Aynuyn fi Rajal al Yadayn (a treatise on the raising of the hands in salah). He died in 1322 A.H. May Allah shower his mercy upon him.

Allamah Anwar Shah Kashmiri rahmatullahi alaih. (1292-1352 AH) Muhammad Anwar Shah bin Shai Kh Muadham Shah Kashmiri. He was born in 1292 AH in Wudwan, Kashmir. He began studying with his father at a very young age, and by the time he was seven he had memorised the whole Quran and completed the detailed reading of a number of books on various topics. He continued his studies of Arabic, fiqh and related sciences under the ulama of Kashmir, and by the age of twelve began answering fatawaa. He then travelled to Deoband in India to further his studies under Shai Kh ul Hind Mufti Mahmood Hasan Deobandi and Shai Kh Muhammad Ishaq Kashmiri. Later in life he also taught at the same institute.

His many students include Muhaddith Yusuf Binnoori, Shai Kh Habib ul Rahman Aadhami, and Moulana Badr Alam Merhi. His written works include Mushkilat al Quran, Fa’id al Bari (a commentary on Bukhari), al Arf al Shadiyy (a commentary on Tirmidhi) and al Tasreeh bi ma Tawatara ji Nuzul al Masoeeh (a
collection of ahadeeth proving the descent of the Prophet \( \text{SAW} \). He died in Deoband in the year 1352 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

**Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad Uthmani rahmatullahi alaih.** (1310-1394 AH)

Dhafar Ahmad bin Latceef Uthmani Thanwi. He was born in 1310 AH in Deoband, India. He began his learning with a number of local teachers before moving to Thanabhum where he was taught by various ulama including his maternal uncle Moullana Ashraf Ali Thanwi. He then studied hadeeth under Moullana Muhammad Rashid Kanpuri and Moullana Muhammad Ishaq Bardawi in Kanpur before finally travelling to Saharanpur to continue his studies with Muhaddith Khalil Ahmad Saharanpuri.

After graduation he engaged himself in teaching and writing for the rest of his life. His many works include the famous and indispensable I'laa al Sunan (a large collection of ahadeeth on which many of the rulings of the Hanafi fiqih are based), Mushkilat al Quran and Kaskh al Duja an Wajh al Riba. He died in 1394 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

**Muhaddith Yusuf Binnouri rahmatullahi alaih.** (1326-1397 AH / 1908-1978)

Abu al Mahasin Muhammad Yusuf bin Sayyid Muhammad Zakariyya Binnouri Husaini. He was born in 1326 AH close to Peshawar. He learnt the Quran from his father and uncle and studied the basics of a few subjects with a number of ulama in Kabul. He then spent a few years in Darul Uloom Deoband before travelling to Jamia Islamia in Delhi, India where he completed his studies in hadith under a number of prominent ulama including Allama Anwar Shah Kashmiri and Moullana Shabbir Ahmad Uthmani. He also taught here for some time whilst assuming other scholarly and literary responsibilities.

In 1951 he migrated to Pakistan where he established an institute for higher learning in Arabic and Islamic sciences. Apart from the students he taught in these establishments, many prominent ulama heard hadith and obtained ijazah from him. They include Shaikh Sulaiman bin Abdur Rahman al Sanee of Makkah, Shaikh Ibrahim Khatani of Madinah, Shaikh Abdul Aziz Uyun al Sud of Hims, Syria, and Shaikh Abdul Fattah Abu Ghuddah.

Muhaddith Yusuf Binnouri was a man of letters and authored a number of works including a partly completed commentary of Tirmidhi titled Ma'arif al Sunan, Bashyarah al Areeb fi Masaail al Qiblah wa al Mahaarieeb, and Nafrat al Anbar fi Hayat Imam al Asr al Shaikh Muhammad Anwar. He died in 1397 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

**Shaikh ul Hadeeth Moullana Muhammad Zakariyyah rahmatullahi alaih.** (1315-1402 AH)

Muhammad Zakariyya bin Muhammad Yahya Siddiqui Kandhalvi. He was born in Kandhla in the province of Muzaffarnagar, U.P., India in 1315 AH. His studies began at a young age. He learnt the basics of Urdu and Persian from his uncle Moullana Muhammad Ilyas before memorising the Quran and studying Arabic and other religious subjects under various teachers including his father, Moullana Yahya. During that period of childhood he was also blessed with the opportunity of spending time with his father in the company of the famous muhaddith and faqeeh Moullana Rashid Ahmad Gangohi. In 1328 he was taken to Mazahir ul Uloom, Saharanpur where he studied a number of books of hadith with his father before completing Bukhari and Tirmidhi with Muhaddith Khalil Ahmad Saharanpuri.

After graduation in 1335 AH he was appointed a teacher at the same institute, Mazahir ul Uloom. He progressed rapidly, assuming many responsibilities before becoming the head teacher. Although his proficiency and expertise were recognised in most fields of learning it was the science of hadith which remained his passion and focus of attention throughout his life. He engaged in the learning and teaching of this subject for many years with great diligence and devotion until he became exclusively referred to as 'Shaikh ul Hadeeth'. Along with many other major books of hadith he taught the whole of Sahih Bukhari in thorough detail more than thirty times.

---

576 Darul Uloom Binnouri Town, Karachi.
Shaikh ul Hadeeth Moulana Muhammad Zakariyya authored over sixty works on various topics in both Arabic and Urdu. They include Awjaz al Masalik ila Muwatta Malik (a copious commentary of Imam Malik's Muwatta published in fifteen volumes), Fadail-e-A'maal (collections of ahadeeth with commentaries on numerous topics such as salah, Hajj, Quran, dhikr, sadaqah, and salat & salam upon the Prophet ﷺ), al Kawkab al Durri ala Jami' al Tirmidhi (footnotes on Muhaddith Rashid Ahmad Gangohi's lectures on Tirmidhi as recorded by his faithful student and disciple, Shaikh ul Hadeeth's father Moulana Yahya Kandhalwi), and Lami' al Darari (footnotes on Muhaddith Rashid Ahmad Gangohi's lectures on Bukhari as recorded by his father). Towards the end of his life he emigrated to Madinah where he died in 1402 AH. May Allah have mercy on him.

Glossary

This glossary is designed to give the less familiar reader a brief and basic understanding of the terms used in this book. It is not intended to provide a comprehensive, linguistically accurate or terminologically conclusive definition of these Arabic terms, as such technical detail can be found elsewhere and is not within the scope of this work.

adhan Call to prayer.
orkaan The compulsory components of any act of worship without which it remains invalid.
Asr The third prayer of the day.
awrah The part of the body that must be covered.
azeemah Foregoing the concession in the hope of receiving a greater reward for adhering to the original.
basmalah Reciting 'Bismillah al Rahman al Raheem.'
dhaeeef 'Weak'. Normally used to describe a narration that does not meet the stringent standards of saheeh or hasan hadeeth in terms of authenticity. Also used to describe a narrator who has been declared unreliable by recognised scholars because of his lack of integrity or poor memory.
Dhuhr The second prayer of the day.
faqeeh (plural: fuqaha) Jurist; one who has extensive knowledge and experience in the science of fiqh.
fardh Obligatory, such as fardh salah as opposed to nafl (optional).
fiqh The understanding and application of Islamic ideas, laws, commandments, etc from the original sources of the Shariah.
ghareeb A hadeeth whose sanad contains one or more links of only one narrator.
hadeeth (plural: ahadeeth) 'Tradition'. Normally used to describe the words, actions, features and silent approvals of the Prophet ﷺ.
hafidh (plural: huffadhih) Most famously used to describe one who has committed the entire Quran to memory. In the context of hadeeth it is a comparative term referring to one who has expertise in this field regardless of the number of ahadeeth he has memorised.
hasan ‘Good.’ A term used to categorise a hadeeth whose sanad contains one or more reporters who are reliable, but maybe less able to preserve and memorise ahadeeth than the reporters of saheeh ahadeeth. Although a hasan hadeeth may not fulfill the stringent conditions of a saheeh hadeeth, it is still considered authentic and therefore accepted as binding evidence and acted upon like a normal saheeh hadeeth.

hasan li ghairihi A particular hadeeth may be classified dhaeeef owing to some weakness or defect, but may be upgraded to the rank of hasan because of some external factors such as supporting narrations. Such a hadeeth is known as hasan li ghairihi.

ihitfaj To lean to one side and rest on the posterior. It is more or less the same as sadil. (See below.)

ijazah ‘Permission.’ Normally refers to the official permission granted by a teacher to a qualified student to teach and continue the work in a particular field. An example is ijazah in hadeeth.

ijtihad Applying one’s mental faculties to the utmost and exerting oneself to pass judgement and reach an independent and original conclusion about a particular matter whilst making direct recourse to the original sources of the Shariah.

illah Defect. Normally used to describe a hidden defect in a hadeeth which may render it dhaeeef despite the apparent soundness of its text and chain.

iq'a iq'a'a is of two kinds: the iq'a'a of a dog, which is to place both the posterior and the hands on the floor and to raise the knees in front. The second form of iq'a'a is to sit on the balls of the feet keeping the knees on the ground, and to rest the posterior upon the heels.

iqamah A brief call to prayer made immediately before the congregational salah. Its wording is similar to that of the adhan.

isnad Chain of narration.

jahr To say or recite out aloud.

janazah Funeral.

jarh Disparagement. Used to describe a recognised scholar’s censure of a particular narrator whose reports he declares unreliable for some reason.

jayyid ‘Very good.’ Often used to describe an authentic sanad or hadeeth. It is recognised by the scholars as a form of saheeh.

jilsah al istrahah The sitting of rest.

kunyah Apellation; alias.

layyin Soft. Used to describe weakness in a narrator.

leen Softness. Used to describe weakness in a narrator.

m'aaloo A hadeeth containing an illah.

madhhhab School of thought.

makrooh Undesirable; discouraged; disapproved. Used frequently to classify something that has not been expressly forbidden in the Shariah but could fall in the category of prohibition because of circumstantial evidence or external reasons. It may also be used to describe something regarding which there appears to be conflicting evidence, thus making it prudent to abstain from it without absolutely declaring it forbidden.

marfu A hadeeth that is attributed directly to the Prophet ﷺ.

mas'alah (plural: masaail)

masjid Mosque.

matrook Abandoned. Used to describe a narrator or hadeeth.

mawqaf A narration ascribed to a Sahabi ﷺ as different to marfu, (one attributed directly to the Prophet ﷺ).

mu'allaq A hadeeth from the Prophet ﷺ or a narration from a Sahabi ﷺ quoted without a sanad.

modalis One who practices taadlees.

muhammad (plural: muhaddithun)

mujahid One who is qualified to do ijtihad.

mumayyarah To reel. In salah this means rising from the second sajdah in the first rak'ah and third rak'ah without sitting.

munkar A relative term employed for ahadeeth of a unique and peculiar nature, though it is most often used to describe a weak narration that contradicts other accepted ahadeeth.

munkar al hadeeth Refers to a reporter whose ahadeeth contain munkar narrations.

munqati’ A hadeeth reported directly from a Sahabi by a Tab’ Tabiiee with the link of a Tabiiee missing. Sometimes this term is used to describe a hadeeth that contains any missing link.

muqtadi One who is praying salah behind the Imam in a congregation.
mursal  A hadith reported directly from the Prophet ﷺ by a Tabeeb with the link of a Sahabi missing.

musalli  One who is performing salah.

mutawatir  A practice, report or hadith related with tawatur (in succession) by such a large group of people at each stage that they cannot be expected to have agreed to lie collectively.

nafl  Optional. Normally used for acts of worship such as nafl salah as opposed to faridh (obligatory) salah.

gawmah  The period of standing after ruk'ū and before sujud.

giblah  The direction of the Ka'bah in Makkah, which is to be faced in prayer.

qiyaam  The period for which a person stands and normally recites the Quran in salah.

qunoot

rak'ah (plural: rak'ah)  One cycle or unit of prayer consisting of qiyaam, one ruk'ū, and two sujud.

ruk'ū  The period of bowing in salah.

sadd  To draw out the right leg to one side of the body and place the left leg beneath one's right thigh. In this way the left haunch will come to rest on the ground rather than on the left leg. Similar to tawwarruk. only that the right foot will be spread rather than being kept upright.

sadoog  'Honest.' Normally used in reference to a narrator who is trustworthy himself, but whose ability to memorise and preserve narrations does not match that of a thiqaah reporter.

Sahabah (single: Sahabi)  The noble companions ﷺ of the Prophet ﷺ who saw him as believers.

saheev  A hadith whose uninterrupted sanad consists entirely of thiqaah reporters who are both trustworthy and able to preserve hadith soundly. Both the chain and the text of the hadith must also be free from any shudhudh (irregularity: see shaadh below) or illah (defect).

sahw  Error. Here it means an error committed in salah, which must be compensated for by adding two sujud at the end of the prayer.

sajdah  Prostration.

saktah  Brief pause of silence.

salah  Prayer.

salah al janazah  Funeral prayer.

salam  The greeting at the end of salah with the words 'Assalamu ...'

sanad  Chain of narration.

sadr  Concealment; to conceal.

shaadh  A hadith or part of a hadith reported by a thiqaah or sadoog narrator that contradicts a superior narration.

shawahid  Supporting narrations related on the authority of different Sahabah ﷺ.

sujud  Prostration.

sunnah  A word of many meanings in different contexts. When used in conjunction with the word Quran as in 'Quran and Sunnah' it normally refers to the entire collection of ahadeeth that have been reported from the Prophet ﷺ.

surah  Chapter of the Quran.

Surah al Fatihah  The first chapter of the Quran.

t'adeel  Used to describe a recognised scholar's endorsement of a particular narrator whom he declares reliable and trustworthy.

ta'aleen  Education; teaching.

ta'awwudh  The saying of 'Aoudhu billahi minashaitanir rajeem.'

Tab'  Tabeeb  The Muslim companions of the Tabi'yun.

Tabi'yun (Single: Tabeeb)  The Muslim companions of the Sahabah ﷺ.

takleej  To report a hadith in a manner that conceals its weakness. This undesirable practice involves omitting the name of a weak narrator or identifying him with a less familiar name, or relating the hadith in a manner that falsely gives the impression that the narrator heard it himself.

tafsir  Exegesis. Most often used to describe the commentary of the Quran.

tahiyah  The recitation of the prayer: 'At-tahiyatu lillahi wassalamatu watayyibatu ...'

tahmeed  The saying of 'Allahu Akbar.'

takhreej  The referencing of hadith, mainly to their original sources of narration.

tarabb'ū  To draw out one's right leg towards the right side of the body and to place the left leg beneath the right leg.
tasbeeh  The recitation of ‘Subhana Rabbiiyal Adheem’ in ruk’u, or ‘Subhana Rabbiiyal A’ala’ in sujud.
tashahhud  Similar to tahiyah. (See above.) It is also used for the period of sitting in which the tahiyah is recited.
tasheeh  To classify a hadeeth or report as saheeh (authentic).
tatbeer  To clasp both palms between one’s knees in ruk’u.
tawarruk  To sit placing the left warik (haunch) on the ground, and extending both legs towards the right with the left foot under the right thigh and the right foot upright. Similar to sadd.
tawatur  Succession. See mutawatir above.
thana  Dua recited in the very beginning of salah after Takbeer al Tahreemah. Also referred to as Dua al Istitfah.
thiqah  Authentic, reliable. Normally used in reference to a narrator in a sanad who is both trustworthy and able to preserve hadeeth soundly.
ulama  Scholars.
ummah  The collective body of believers who are the followers of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.
wudhu  Ablution; washing some of the body’s limbs before prayer.

Bibliography


74. al Risalah. Imam Shafiee. al Maktabah al Ilmiyyah, Beirut.


77. Kitab Adaab al Mashty ila al Salah. Published by Jumiah al Imam Muhammad, Riyadh as part of the ‘Muhammad bin Abdul Wahhab week’ project.


Reference Notes

When only the names of the authors of hadeeth are mentioned without the titles then the following books are being referred to. If the same authors are being quoted from their other works the specific titles will be mentioned. Note that this is relevant only to the works of hadeeth.

Imam Abu Hanifah. Ahadeeth narrated by the Imam with his own chain of narration and collected by Imam Abu al Muayyad al Khawarzami in his Jami' al Masaneed from a total of fifteen different Musnads.

Imam Malik in his al Muwatta.

Imam Muhammad in his narration of Imam Malik's al Muwatta.

Abu Dawood al Tayalisi in his Musnad.

Abdul Razzaq in his al Musannaf.

Saeed bin Mansoor in his Sunan.

Humaidi in his Musnad.

Abu Bakr bin Abi Shaibah in his al Kitab al Musannaf fi al Ahadeeth wa al Aathaar.

Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal in his Musnad.

Abd bin Humaid in his Musnad (numbers given from Muntakhab Musnad Abd bin Humaid).

Darimi in his Musnad.

Bukhari in his Saheeh.

Muslim in his Saheeh.

Ibn Majah in his Sunan.

Abu Dawood in his Sunan.
Tirmidhi in his Jami'.

Nasai in his al Mujtaba (also known as al Sunan al Sughra).

Ibn al Jarood in his al Muntaqa.

Ibn Jareer al Tabari in his Jami' al Bayaan fi Ta'weel al Quran.

Abu Ya'laa al Mawsili in his Musnad.

Ibn Khuzaimah in his Saheeh.

Tahawi in his Sharh Maani al Aathaar.

Abu Awanah in his Saheeh.

Daruqutni in his Sunan.

Hakim in his al Mustadrak ala al Saheehayn.

Baihaqi in his al Sunan al Kubra.

Hafidh Ibn al Humam in his Fath al Qadeer.

Hafidh Zailaee in his Nasb al Rayah.

Hafidh Haithami in his Majma' al Zawaid.

Hafidh Ibn al Turkumani in his al Jawhar al Naqiyy.

Dhahabi in his Talkhees al Mustadrak.

Bouseeree in Misbah al Zujajah.

Imam Nimawi in his Aathaar al Sunan.

Muhaddith Dhafar Ahmad al Uthmani in his l'laa al Sunan.

Muhaddith Yusuf Binnouri in Maarif al Sunan.
The divine gift of salah lies at the very heart of Islam, sustaining the truly unique relationship man has with his Creator. Understanding the fundamentals of this great treasure is the primary obligation of every believer.

This book, ‘The salah of a believer in the Quran and Sunnah’ documents the authentic method of salah portrayed in the book of Allah and the ahadeeth of His Messenger ﷺ as understood and adopted by the pious predecessors of the best and earliest Muslim generations. It deals with the subject in a definitive manner relying on an exhaustive study of the relevant verses and ahadeeth. Readers are given a detailed and balanced insight into the sources which the mujtahid Imams and jurists of the Hanafi fiqh rigorously studied under renowned scholarship in their sincere attempt to fulfill the Prophet’s ﷺ command ‘Pray as you have seen me praying’.

This book is an essential and indispensable reference tool for all Muslims who would like a simple yet comprehensive guide to salah, as well as for those who seek an in-depth and substantiated analysis of this fundamental pillar of Islam.

THE AUTHOR: Shaykh Abu Yusuf Riyadh ul Haq graduated from Darul Uloom al Islamiyyah, Bury, UK in 1991 where he completed his learning in Quran, hadeeth, Arabic and Islamic studies. Since graduation he has remained actively involved in d’awah and teaching. He is currently the Imam and Khateeb of the Birmingham Central Masjid, and a teacher of hadeeth, Arabic & Islamic studies at Madinatul Uloom al Islamiyyah, Kidderminster, UK. He has lectured on a range of topics including Quranic tafseer, hadeeth, aqeedah and fiqh at the masjid and at various other locations. Many of these recordings are distributed by the Islamic Shariah Institute and are widely available.